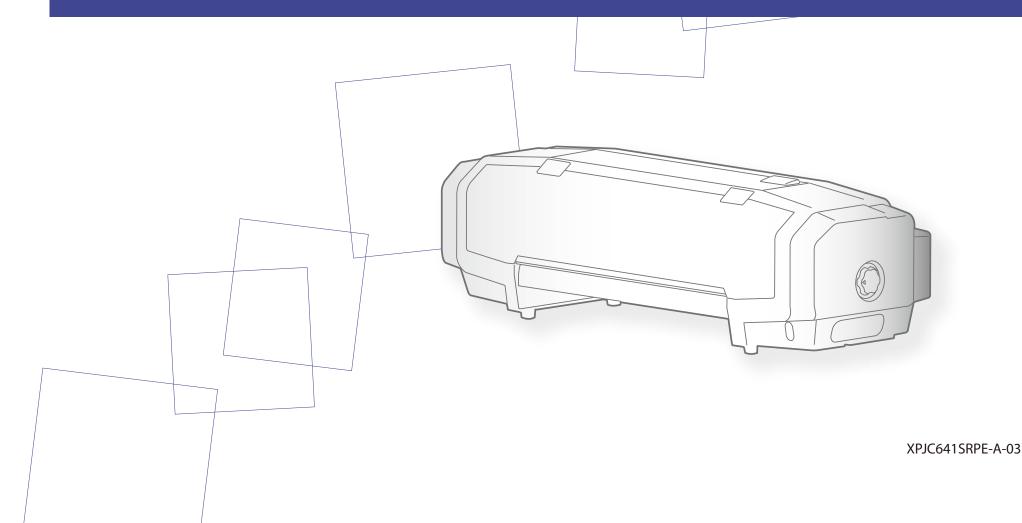


# XPJ-C641SR-P

### **Operation Manual**

**Operations and Maintenance Methods** 



#### Important Notice

### For Users in Europe



The CE marking is a mandatory European marking for certain product groups to indicate conformity with the essential health and safety requirements set out in European Directives.

By affixing the CE marking, the manufacturer, his authorized representative, or the person placing

the product on the market or putting it into service ensures that the item meets all the essential requirements of all applicable EU directives and that the applicable conformity assessment procedures have been applied.

#### For Users in the United States

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

#### CAUTION

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in radiation exposure.

.....

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> and Windows<sup>®</sup> are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

VerteLith<sup>™</sup> is trademark of MUTOH INDUSTRIES LTD.

Company names and product names that appear in this Guide are registered trademarks or trademarks of the respective companies.

#### .....

- Unauthorized copying or duplication of the whole or part of the contents of this Guide is prohibited.
- Every care has been taken in writing the contents of this Guide, but please contact MUTOH or the dealer you purchased the product from if you find any unclear, erroneous or otherwise unsatisfactory content in the Guide.
- Please be aware that MUTOH will not be liable in any way for failures or accidents that result from handling or operating the printer according to any procedures other than those set forth in this Guide.



| Safety Precautions                            | 8   |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Electrical shock/ short circuit/ fire hazards | 9   |
| Installation                                  | .11 |
| Handling                                      | .12 |
| Ink and waste fluid                           | .14 |
| Warning labels                                | .15 |
| Instruction Labels                            | .16 |

### **Before Use**

### **18**

7

| Printer main components / Functions  | 19   |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Front view                           | . 19 |
| Rear view                            | . 21 |
| Printer control panel                | . 22 |
| Connecting to a Computer             | 24   |
| System configuration of this product | 26   |
| Launching/ Opening/Exiting MSM       | 27   |
| Launching MSM                        | . 27 |
| Displaying MSM                       | . 27 |
| Displaying remote panel              | . 28 |

| Changing an IP address29                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|
| Exiting MSM36                                 |
| Launching VerteLith                           |
| What you can do on this machine               |
| Printing area                                 |
| Supported media 40                            |
| Media Size40                                  |
| Media handling cautions41                     |
| Precaution on storing media after use41       |
| Precautions                                   |
| Please use this printer regularly42           |
| Please handle ink cartridge carefully42       |
| Please conduct maintenance regularly43        |
| Some parts need to be replaced periodically43 |

### **Basic Operations**

| Printing workflow       |
|-------------------------|
| Powering ON / OFF 46    |
| Turning the power ON46  |
| Turning the power OFF47 |



| Sleep Mode                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| To start and end sleep mode48                                                                                                                                                        |
| Loading media into the machine 52                                                                                                                                                    |
| Loading a roll media into the printer52                                                                                                                                              |
| Loading a cut sheet into the machine57                                                                                                                                               |
| Nozzle check and cleaning 58                                                                                                                                                         |
| Run a nozzle check58                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Head cleaning62                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Calibrating your printer 64                                                                                                                                                          |
| Print quality calibration ("Adjust Print")64                                                                                                                                         |
| Media Feed Adjustment                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Start printing                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Start printing         79           Pause / Resume a print job         85                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Pause / Resume a print job                                                                                                                                                           |
| Pause / Resume a print job                                                                                                                                                           |
| Pause / Resume a print job85Cancel a print job86Cancel printing from the machine86                                                                                                   |
| Pause / Resume a print job    85      Cancel a print job    86      Cancel printing from the machine    86      Cancel printing from the computer    86                              |
| Pause / Resume a print job85Cancel a print job86Cancel printing from the machine86Cancel printing from the computer86Feed/ Rewind media88                                            |
| Pause / Resume a print job85Cancel a print job86Cancel printing from the machine86Cancel printing from the computer86Feed/ Rewind media88Cut the media90                             |
| Pause / Resume a print job85Cancel a print job86Cancel printing from the machine86Cancel printing from the computer86Feed/ Rewind media88Cut the media90Cut from the control panel90 |

| High-Capacity ink pack adapter                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When using the high-capacity ink pack adapter for the first time 94 |
| Replace the adapter's plug94                                        |
| Adjust head height                                                  |
| About head height95                                                 |
| Advanced settings                                                   |
| Set up auto cutting97                                               |
| Set up vacuum fan100                                                |
| Specify the heater setting102                                       |
| Cooling down setting104                                             |
| Specify the ink drying time106                                      |
| Roll Length Manage menu108                                          |
| Origin setting110                                                   |
|                                                                     |

### **Cutting Workflow**

| Cut Preparation 114                       |
|-------------------------------------------|
| Preparation flow for cutting114           |
| Install a blade on the blade holder115    |
| Adjust blade depth117                     |
| Install the blade holder into the machine |
| Run a test cut122                         |
| Adjust the contour cutting position130    |



| Cutting types            |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Create a cutting data    | 134 |
| Types of crop marks      | 135 |
| Mark detection order     | 136 |
| Print and cut separately | 137 |
| Operation flow           | 137 |
| Step1. Print             |     |
| Step2. Cut               | 144 |
| Print & Cut              | 146 |
| Cut only                 | 148 |
| Optimize cut quality     | 150 |
| Set cutting conditions   |     |
| Cut quality of curves    |     |
| Cut scale adjustment     |     |

### Maintenance

| About Maintenance                  | 163 |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Check and replace ink              | 165 |
| Check the ink level                | 165 |
| When an ink is nearing replacement | 166 |
| Replacing with a new ink cartridge | 167 |
| Emptying waste ink tank            | 172 |

| Cleaning each part 17                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | '5                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Head cleaning1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 75                                           |
| Soak Cleaning1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 78                                           |
| Cleaning each part of the machine18                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 82                                           |
| Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode18                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 83                                           |
| Cleaning the parts around the print head18                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 85                                           |
| Cleaning the cleaning wiper1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 88                                           |
| Cleaning the parts around the cap unit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 90                                           |
| Cleaning of color sensor1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 92                                           |
| Cleaning the blade holder                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 94                                           |
| Cleaning the blade for contour cutter1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 96                                           |
| Cleaning inside the machine1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 97                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                              |
| Replacing consumable parts19                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 9                                            |
| Replacing consumable parts    19      Replacing the flushing box pad    20                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 00                                           |
| Replacing the flushing box pad                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 00<br>03                                     |
| Replacing the flushing box pad                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 00<br>03<br>05                               |
| Replacing the flushing box pad                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 00<br>03<br>05<br>09                         |
| Replacing the flushing box pad                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 00<br>03<br>05<br>09<br>11                   |
| Replacing the flushing box pad                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 00<br>03<br>05<br>09<br>11<br>12             |
| Replacing the flushing box pad       20         Replacing the blade for sheet cutter       20         Replacing the adapter's plug for high-capacity ink pack adapter       20         Replacing the cutting mat       20         Replacing the blade for contour cutter       20         Replacing the blade holder       20 | 00<br>03<br>05<br>09<br>11<br>12<br>13       |
| Replacing the flushing box pad.       20         Replacing the blade for sheet cutter       20         Replacing the adapter's plug for high-capacity ink pack adapter       20         Replacing the cutting mat       20         Replacing the blade for contour cutter       20         Replacing the blade holder       20         Replacing the cleaning wiper       20                                                                                                                          | 00<br>03<br>05<br>09<br>11<br>12<br>13       |
| Replacing the flushing box pad.       20         Replacing the blade for sheet cutter       20         Replacing the adapter's plug for high-capacity ink pack adapter       20         Replacing the cutting mat       20         Replacing the blade for contour cutter       20         Replacing the blade for contour cutter       20         Replacing the blade holder       21         Replacing the cleaning wiper       22         Transport and long-term storage       21                 | 00<br>03<br>05<br>09<br>11<br>12<br>13<br>15 |



### When problems occur



| Messages and Error Messages                    | . 228 |
|------------------------------------------------|-------|
| When it appears                                | 228   |
| Error messages and solutions                   | 232   |
| Smartchip Recovery                             | 236   |
| Troubleshooting                                | . 237 |
| Installation and initial setup-related trouble | 237   |
| Printer operation trouble                      | 239   |
| Media-related trouble                          | 240   |
| Printing-related trouble                       | 243   |
| Cutting-related trouble                        | 247   |
| The media is jammed                            | 250   |

### Appendix

| Specifications of this product25              | 3 |
|-----------------------------------------------|---|
| Optional accessories / Consumable supplies 25 | 5 |
| Revision history25                            | 6 |





## **Safety Precautions**

#### **Safety Symbols**

In this document, the following symbols are used for the instructions that must be followed to avoid risk of harm to human health or damage to the property.

Please read and understand the meaning of each symbol and ensure the proper use of the product.

■ The following classifications indicate hazards or damage that could result from ignoring instructions or incorrect handling.

| 🔥 Warning                   | Failure to follow the instructions could result in serious injury or death.                                    |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>!</b> Caution            | Failure to follow the instructions could result in minor injury or damage to the whole or part of the product. |
| The following symbols indic | ate precautions that must be followed.                                                                         |
| $\bigcirc$                  | An action that must be avoided.                                                                                |
|                             | An important instruction that must be followed.                                                                |
| Other symbols               |                                                                                                                |
| G Important /               | Provides information that require special attention or should be followed.                                     |
| Note                        | Provides supplemental or reference information.                                                                |
| (F                          | Indicates the link to the reference section.                                                                   |

#### Note

For the name of each part marked with warning or caution symbols, see "Printer main components / Functions" P.19.



### Electrical shock/ short circuit/ fire hazards



#### Do not install this product in a location Make sure to use a designated power soket. with high humidity and dust. Failure to do so could result in an electrical shock or fire. This could result in an electrical shock or fire. Do not use a damaged power cord. Plug the power cord into the wall outlet. This could result in an electrical shock or fire. Do not use power strips. This could generate heat, resulting in fire.. Do not connect or disconnect the power plug Plug the power cords into the wall outlet that 9 has the earth connection and make sure to with wet hands. connect the earth. This could result in an electrical shock. If the earth is not connected, an electrical shock or fire may occur. Do not connect an earth wire to the following Make sure to connect an earth wire to the 1 places: earth connection that meets the following • Gas pipe requirements: It has potential risks of fire or explosion. • Earth terminal of power socket. • Earth wire of telephone cables or lighting • An earth wire with a copper plate which is rods buried at 650 mm or more in the ground. Large current may flow when the lightning Keep ink away from fire or heat source and strikes. **X** store in a cool, dark place. • Water pipe or faucet It may not work properly if a plastic pipe is connected to the pipe.



| $\bigcirc$ | Do not insert or drop metal or flammable<br>objects into the printer through openings such<br>as vent.<br>This could result in an electrical shock or fire.                                                                                                                           |             | <ul> <li>Be sure to use the designated power cords.</li> <li>Failure to do so could result in an electrical shock or fire. For the designated power cord, please contact your local MUTOH dealer.</li> </ul>                                                                    |  |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| $\bigcirc$ | Do not block the vent on the product with<br>cloth or other materials.<br>If covered, the inside the product gets hot,<br>resulting in fire.                                                                                                                                          |             | <ul> <li>The power cord should have the protective ground terminal and make sure to plug in securely.</li> <li>Use the power cords which meet the safety standard, voltage and plug shape of the</li> </ul>                                                                     |  |
|            | <b>Never open the covers securing with screws.</b><br>This could result in an electrical shock or<br>damage to the printer.                                                                                                                                                           |             | country to use this product.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| $\bigcirc$ | <b>Ensure that no moisture enters the product.</b><br>This could result in an electrical short circuit.                                                                                                                                                                               | 0           | Make sure to follow the instructions on this<br>guide to connect the power cord or cables.<br>Failure to do so could result in fire.                                                                                                                                            |  |
| $\bigcirc$ | <b>If foreign objects or liquid accidentally entered t</b><br>This could result in an electrical shock or fire. Imm<br>plug from the outlet. Then contact the MUTOH co                                                                                                                | nediately p | power off the printer and disconnect the power                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| $\bigcirc$ | <ul> <li>Follow the precautions below when handling the power cord.</li> <li>Do not modify power cords.</li> <li>Do not place heavy objects on power cords.</li> <li>Do not bend, twist, or pull on power cords.</li> <li>Do not route power cords near heating equipment.</li> </ul> | $\bigcirc$  | <ul> <li>Follow the precautions below when handling the power plug.</li> <li>Do not allow dust or foreign objects to accumulate around the power plug.</li> <li>Firmly insert the power plug into the wall outlet.</li> <li>Incorrect handling could result in fire.</li> </ul> |  |

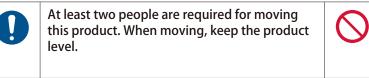


### Installation



| Choose the location which satisfies the requirements below:                                                                                                | Install the product in a location where ventilation can be carried out.                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The floor must be level.                                                                                                                                   | Keep the work area well-ventilated.                                                          |
| <ul> <li>Avoid vibration from the neighboring<br/>devices.</li> </ul>                                                                                      | Odor of the ink could have adversely impact on health.                                       |
| Low humidity and free from dust.                                                                                                                           | If you experience headache, fatigue or dizziness,                                            |
| <ul> <li>Less chance of temperature and humidity<br/>changes.</li> </ul>                                                                                   | stop your work and immediately get to fresh air.<br>If nausea persists, seek medical advice. |
| <ul> <li>Avoid direct sunlight.</li> <li>Avoid water.</li> <li>Avoid direct air onto the printer.</li> <li>Low levels of electromagnetic waves.</li> </ul> | This equipment is not suitable for use in locations where children are likely to be present. |
| Before taking out the product from the packaging<br>around the product first.<br>Failure to do so could cause slip or damage to the                        | g box, make sure to remove the plastic sheet wrapped                                         |





Do not tilt the product.

The ink inside the product may spill. MUTOH cannot guarantee that the printer can run properly.

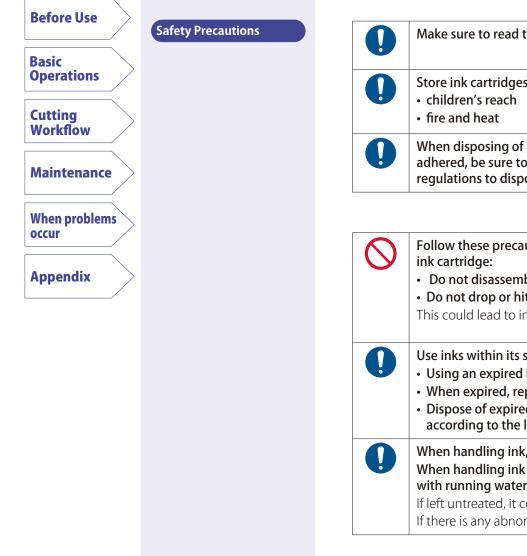


### Handling

|            | <u>^</u> w                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | arning      |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\bigcirc$ | <b>Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the prod</b><br>Failure to do so could result in injury from a fall.                                                                                                                                                    | luct.       |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| $\bigcirc$ | <b>Do not touch the moving parts.</b><br>This could cause injury or damage to the produc                                                                                                                                                                           | t.          |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| $\bigcirc$ | In case you need to move the product after ink leakage.                                                                                                                                                                                                            | was filled, | move it slowly to avoid impact and risk of ink                                                                                                                                           |
|            | <u>.</u> Ca                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | aution      | ,                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| $\bigcirc$ | <ul> <li>Do not attempt the following actions during ink charging:</li> <li>Power off the printer.</li> <li>Disconnect the power cord.</li> <li>Open the front cover or the maintenance cover.</li> <li>Put the media fixing handle in unlock position.</li> </ul> | $\bigcirc$  | Do not touch the cleaning wiper and the print<br>head cap unit with bare hands when cleaning<br>the wiper.<br>If finger oil gets on this, head cleaning cannot<br>be performed properly. |
| $\bigcirc$ | Do not use the media fixing handle while in<br>printer initialization or printing.<br>The print head can interfere with the pinch<br>rollers and cause damage.                                                                                                     | $\bigcirc$  | Do not touch the media feed slot, platen and<br>media guide while the heater is in operation.<br>These parts get hot and could cause burn injury.                                        |
| $\bigcirc$ | Do not use volatile chemicals such as thinner,<br>benzine or alcohol for cleaning.<br>This will damage the paint on the printer.                                                                                                                                   | $\bigcirc$  | <b>Do not touch the media guide while printing.</b><br>The media guide becomes hot and you could get burn injuries.                                                                      |



| $\bigcirc$ | Do not push the tab on the cutter holder too<br>hard or release suddenly.<br>There is a spring under the cutter so that the<br>cutter may jump out from the holder. | $\bigcirc$ | <b>Do not touch the blade edge.</b><br>This will cause injury.                                     |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\bigcirc$ | Never touch the print head nozzles when<br>cleaning the parts around the print head.<br>This could damage the print head.                                           | $\bigcirc$ | Immediately after printing, the media guide gets hot. Allow it to cool down enough to do the work. |
| 0          | <b>Before moving this printer, always empty the waste ink tank even moving short distance.</b><br>Failure to do so may result in damage to the product.             |            |                                                                                                    |



### Ink and waste fluid

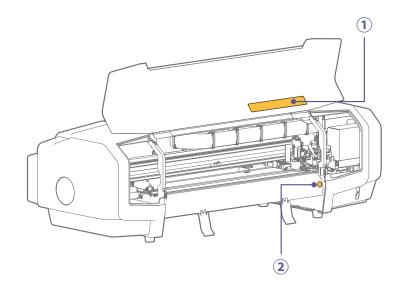
|  | Warning |   |
|--|---------|---|
|  |         | 7 |

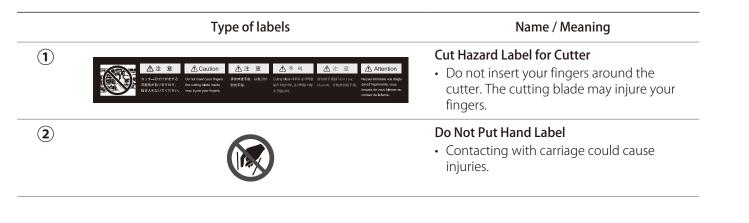
| 0          | Make sure to read the Safety Data Sheet (SDS) be                                                                                                                                                                                                               | efore using ink cartridges for the first time.                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |  |  |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| 0          | Store ink cartridges and waste fluids in a cool, dark place and avoid direct sunlight. Keep away from <ul> <li>children's reach</li> <li>fire and heat</li> </ul>                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |  |  |
|            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | n the printer, or containers and paper towels with ink<br>dustrial waste disposal contractors, related laws, and local                                                                                                                  |  |  |  |
|            | 🥂 Ca                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | ution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |  |  |
| $\bigcirc$ | <ul> <li>Follow these precautions when handling ink cartridge:</li> <li>Do not disassemble</li> <li>Do not drop or hit</li> <li>This could lead to ink leakage.</li> </ul>                                                                                     | Use MUTOH genuine ink.<br>This printer is designed to deliver best performance<br>by using MUTOH genuine ink.<br>The use of non-genuine ink may affect the printer<br>as well as print quality. This is not covered by the<br>warranty. |  |  |  |
|            | <ul> <li>Use inks within its shelf life.</li> <li>Using an expired ink could result in damage to</li> <li>When expired, replace with a new one even if</li> <li>Dispose of expired ink as industrial waste. Put according to the local regulations.</li> </ul> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |  |  |
|            | When handling ink, wear protective gloves, glas<br>When handling ink cartridges, avoid skin or eye<br>with running water.<br>If left untreated, it could cause bloodshot eyes or<br>If there is any abnormality, seek medical advice in                        | contact with ink. If in eyes or on skin, immediately flush<br>mild inflammation.                                                                                                                                                        |  |  |  |

| Before Use             | Safety Precautions |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations    |                    |
| Cutting<br>Workflow    |                    |
| Maintenance            |                    |
| When problems<br>occur |                    |
| Appendix               |                    |
|                        |                    |
|                        |                    |
|                        |                    |
|                        |                    |

### Warning labels

Warning labels are affixed to the hazardous area of the product. Read and follow the instructions on the labels. In case the warning labels came off or get dirty, please contact your local MUTOH dealer for replacement.

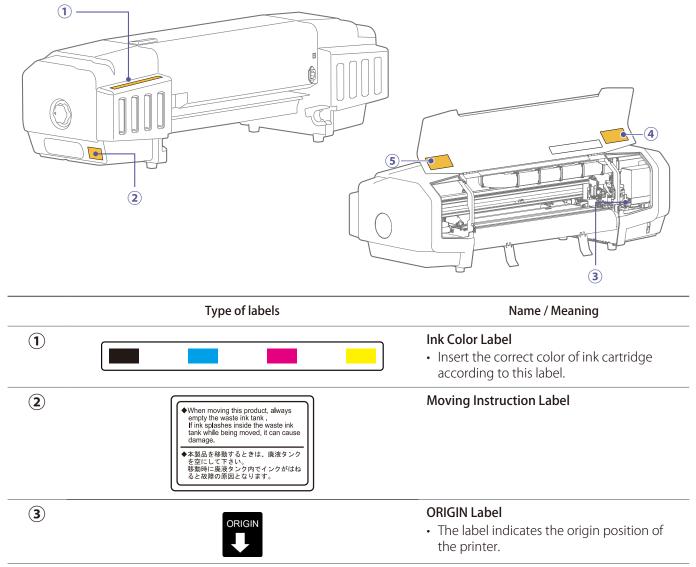




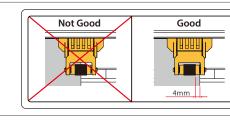


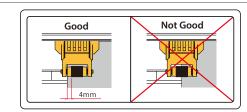
#### **Instruction Labels**

Instruction labels are affixed where special attention for operating this product is required. The contents of each label are shown here.









#### Note Note

4

(5)

For details of proper media position, see the following sections:

"Loading media into the machine" P.52

Insert sheet "Proper pinch roller set up on media"

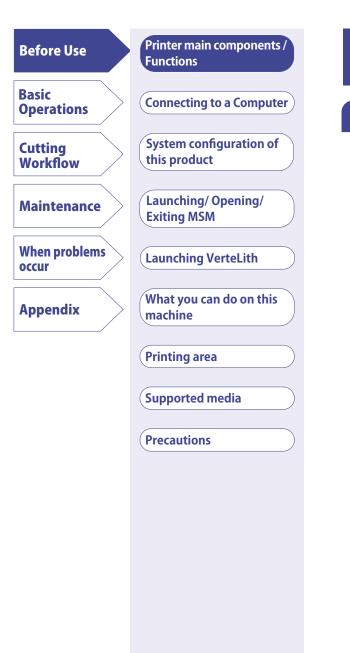
#### Media Position Label R (Origin side)

• Position the pinch roller so that the distance between the edge of the media and the edge of the rubber of the pinch roller is approximately 4 mm.

### Media Position Label L (Opposite of origin side)

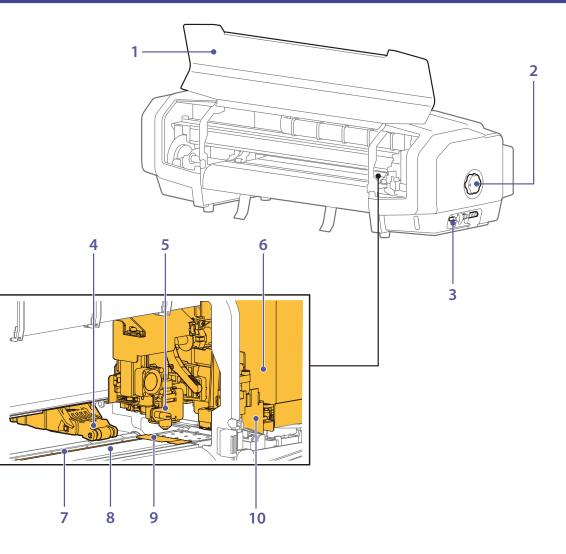
• Position the pinch roller so that the distance between the edge of the media and the edge of the rubber of the pinch roller is approximately 4 mm.



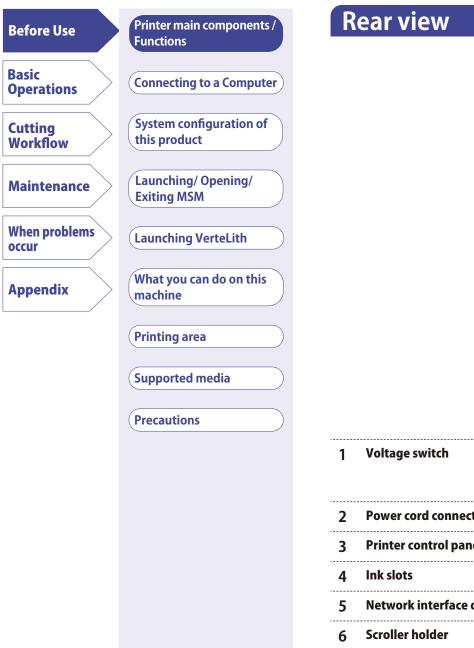


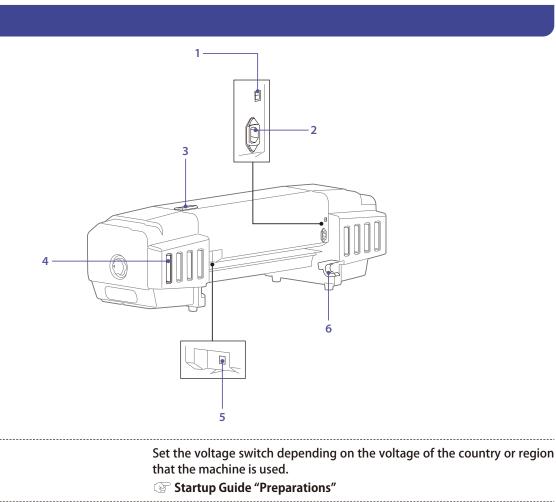
## **Printer main components / Functions**

### **Front view**

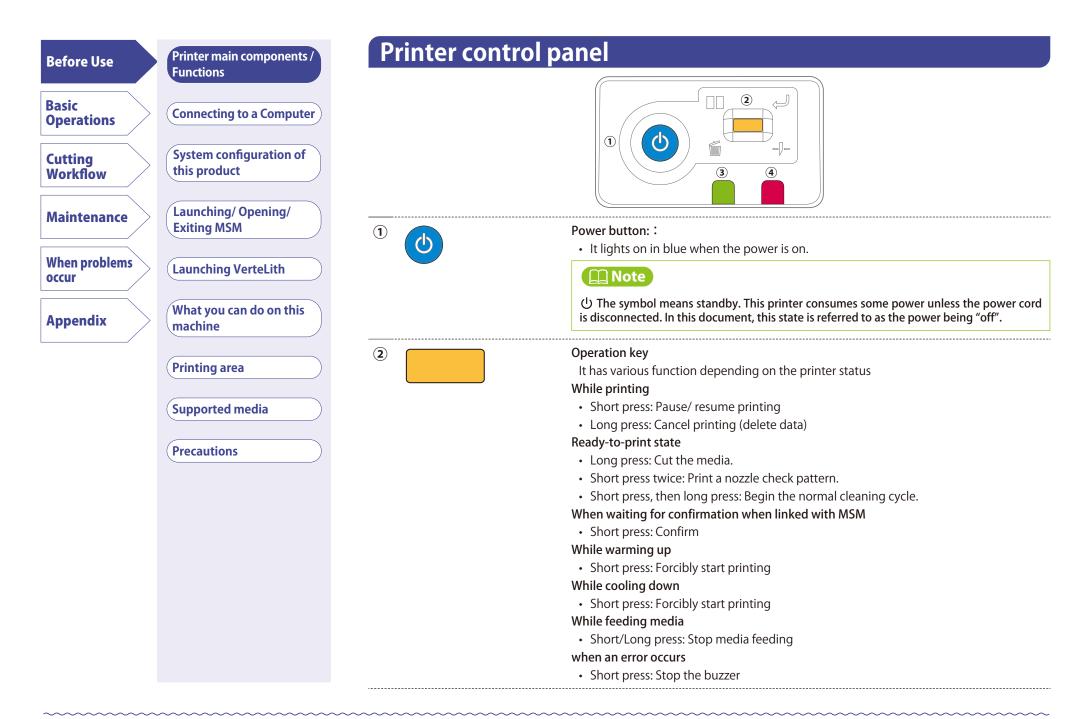


| Before Use          | Printer main components /            | 1  | Front cover         | Open when loading media or performing maintenance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|----|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                     | Functions                            | 2  | Media fixing handle | Turn the handle when loading or removing media.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Basic<br>Operations | Connecting to a Computer             |    |                     | C Important !!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Cutting<br>Workflow | System configuration of this product |    |                     | <ul> <li>Please make sure to do the following:</li> <li>Unlock the media fixing handle when you are not using the machine. If no printing or cutting is performed for 30 minutes or the machine was turned off while the media fixing handle is locked, the buzzer will beep and the</li> </ul> |
| Maintenance         | Launching/ Opening/<br>Exiting MSM   |    |                     | <ul> <li>error LED will turn on.</li> <li>After unlocking the media fixing handle, remove media from the machine.</li> <li>If you keep the media loaded in the machine, the carriage could contact the media has been been been been been been been bee</li></ul>                               |
| When problems       | Launching VerteLith                  | 3  | Drain tube          | media during automatic cleaning.<br>Tube for draining waste ink into a container.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Appendix            | What you can do on this machine      | 4  | Pinch roller        | Hold down the media on the platen by using the media fixing handle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                     | Inachine                             | 5  | Contour cutter      | Cut along the printed line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                     | Printing area                        | 6  | Carriage            | The print head and the cutter are installed on the carriage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                     | Commented modia                      | 7  | Cutting mat         | Protect the cutting edge of contour cuter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                     | (Supported media                     | 8  | Platen              | Media is printed on here. It has a vacuum fan and heater inside.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                     | Precautions                          | 9  | Edge holder         | Place it on the edge of the media to prevent media curl while printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                     |                                      | 10 | Sheet Cutter        | Cut a roll media straight.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |





| 2 | Power cord connector              |                                                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Printer control panel             | Printer control panel" P.22                                       |
| 4 | Ink slots                         | Insert an ink cartridge or a cleaning cartridge into these slots. |
| 5 | Network interface cable connector | Connect an Ethernet cable.                                        |
| 6 | Scroller holder                   | Attach a roll media to the scroller and load it onto the holder.  |





| 3 | Data LED :                                                                      |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | Green flashing indicates the machine is receiving or processing data.           |
| 4 | Error LED :                                                                     |
|   | <ul> <li>Red light or flashing indicates an error or warning occurs.</li> </ul> |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |
|   |                                                                                 |



## **Connecting to a Computer**

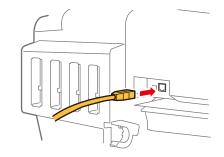
#### G Important/

Make sure your computer meets the following requirements.

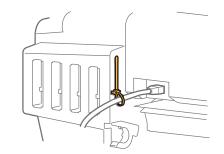
- OS: Windows 11, Windows 10
- CPU: Intel (R) Core (TM) i5 or more
- Memory: 16GB minimum
- Network: Ethernet network port

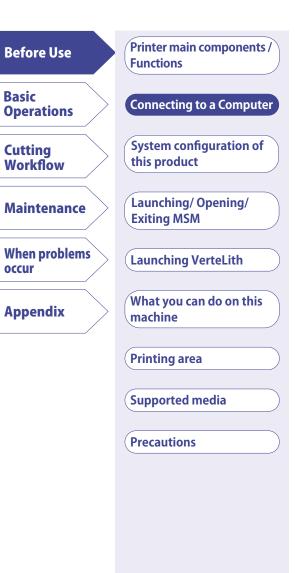
#### **Note**

- The OS support period of software supplied from MUTOH conforms to the Microsoft support lifecycle policies.
- Please also check the system requirements of your RIP software.
  - Connect the Ethernet cable to this product.



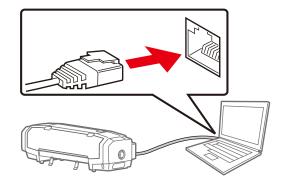
Secure the Ethernet cable with the cable tie.







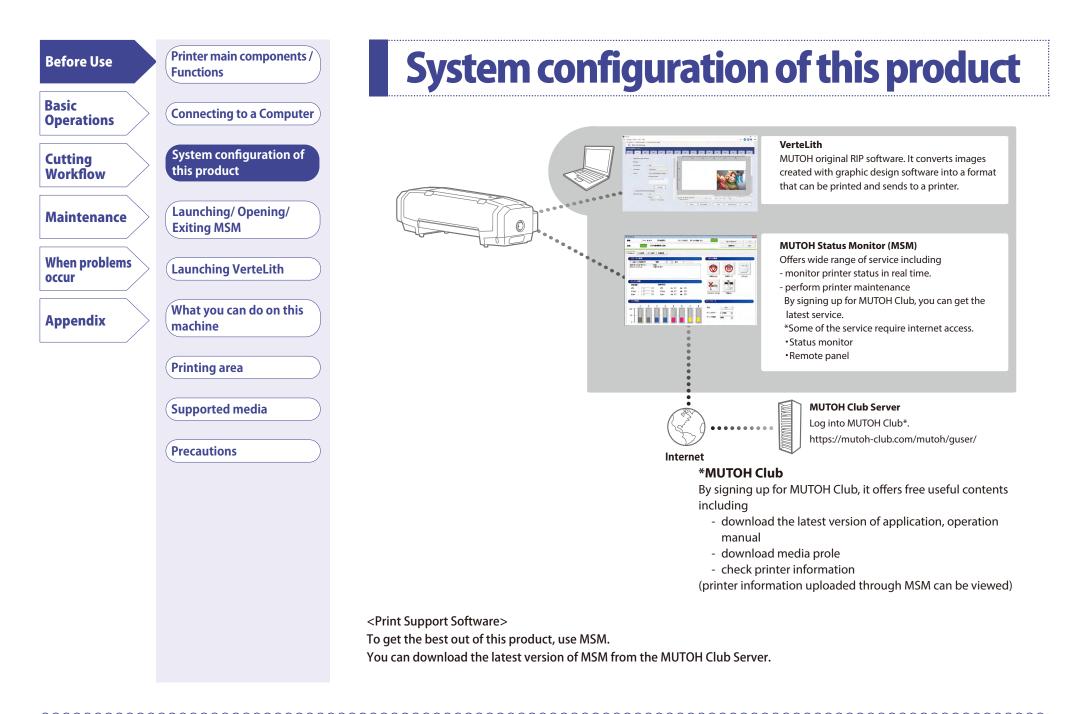
Connect the Ethernet cable to the computer.

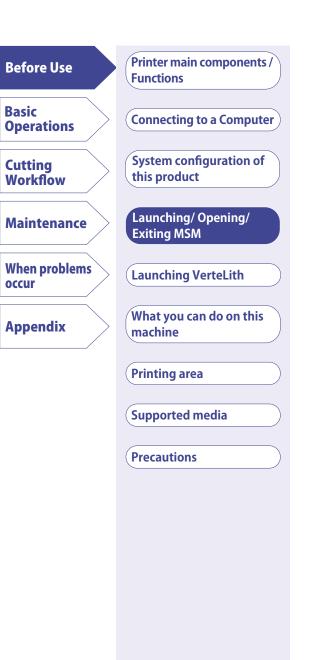


4 Use MSM to assign the IP address, subnet mask and gateway. <sup>(37)</sup> "Launching/ Opening/Exiting MSM" P.27

#### 🛄 Note

- This illustration is an example of peer-to-peer connection between the printer and a computer. The connection method varies depending on your environment.
- If you are using the LAN connection, make sure that your printer and your computer are on the same subnet.





## Launching/ Opening/Exiting MSM

1. Double-click the MSM icon on the desktop.

#### **Launching MSM**



#### **Note**

Launching from the Start Menu of Windows

• Windows 11 / Windows 10

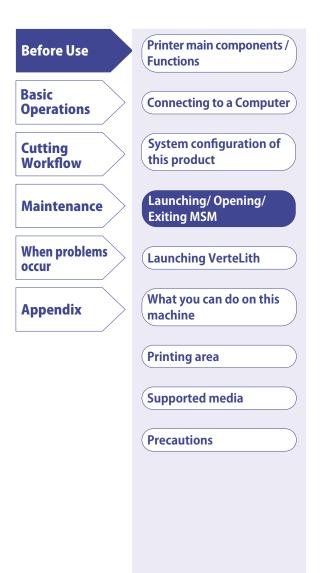
From the [Start] menu, click [All Programs] (or [All Apps]) - [MUTOH] - [MUTOH Status Monitor].

Windows 11 / Windows 10

### **Displaying MSM**



#### 1. Double click the MSM icon in the task tray.

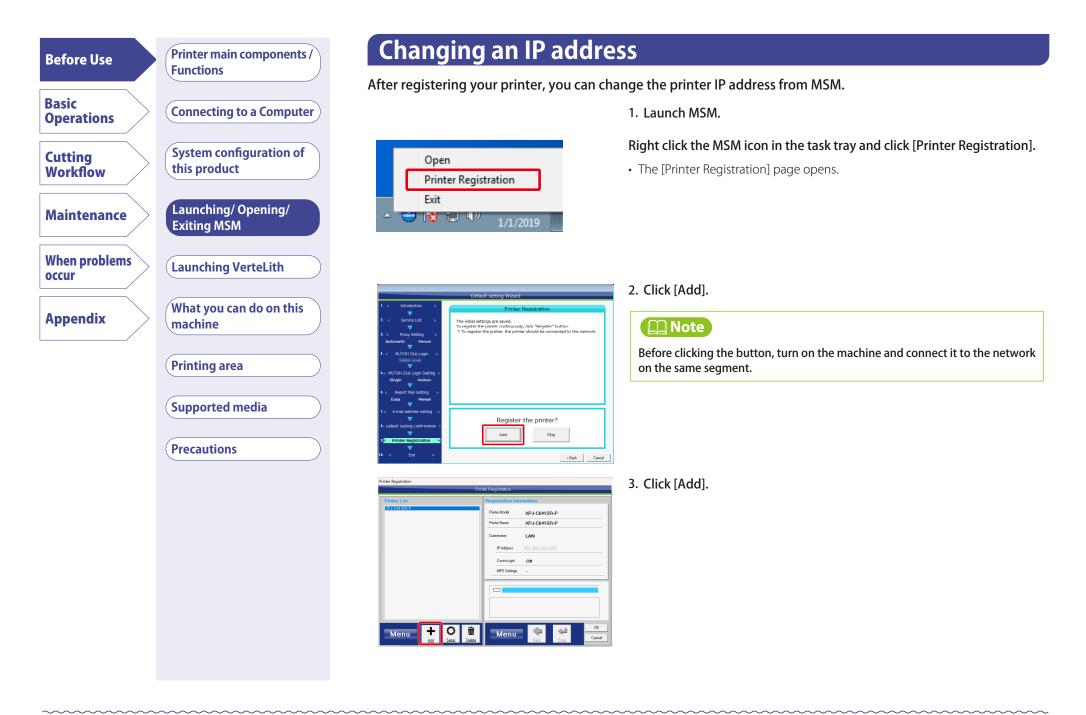


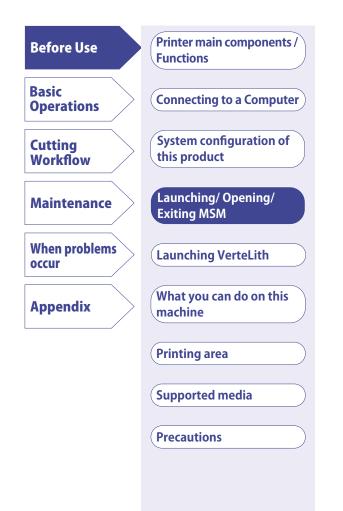
### **Displaying remote panel**

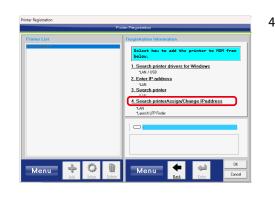
The remote panel allows you to view the printer status or remotely operate your printer.

| Menu                                         | Login ID: -                                                                                                    | PRI                     | Monitor VSM M    |  |  |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|--|--|
|                                              | C Status Monitor                                                                                               |                         |                  |  |  |
| Date and Time Update                         | The second s | Protociation            |                  |  |  |
| User Type Edit                               | Pieter List :                                                                                                  | Printer Hodel :         | -                |  |  |
| Firmware Update                              | Sample                                                                                                         | Printer Serial No. :    | -                |  |  |
| Check current firmware                       |                                                                                                                | IP Address :            | 1.00,000,000,000 |  |  |
|                                              |                                                                                                                | Fanware Version M / C : | a-an / .         |  |  |
| Print History                                | Success                                                                                                        | Control Right           | Info Check       |  |  |
| Printer Info. Backup<br>Printer Info. Upload | Status Information                                                                                             |                         |                  |  |  |
| Exit(MSM Minimize)                           | 2(19-33-34 24)19 (III                                                                                          |                         |                  |  |  |
|                                              |                                                                                                                |                         |                  |  |  |
|                                              |                                                                                                                |                         |                  |  |  |

- 1. Click [Remote Panel].
- The remote panel opens.



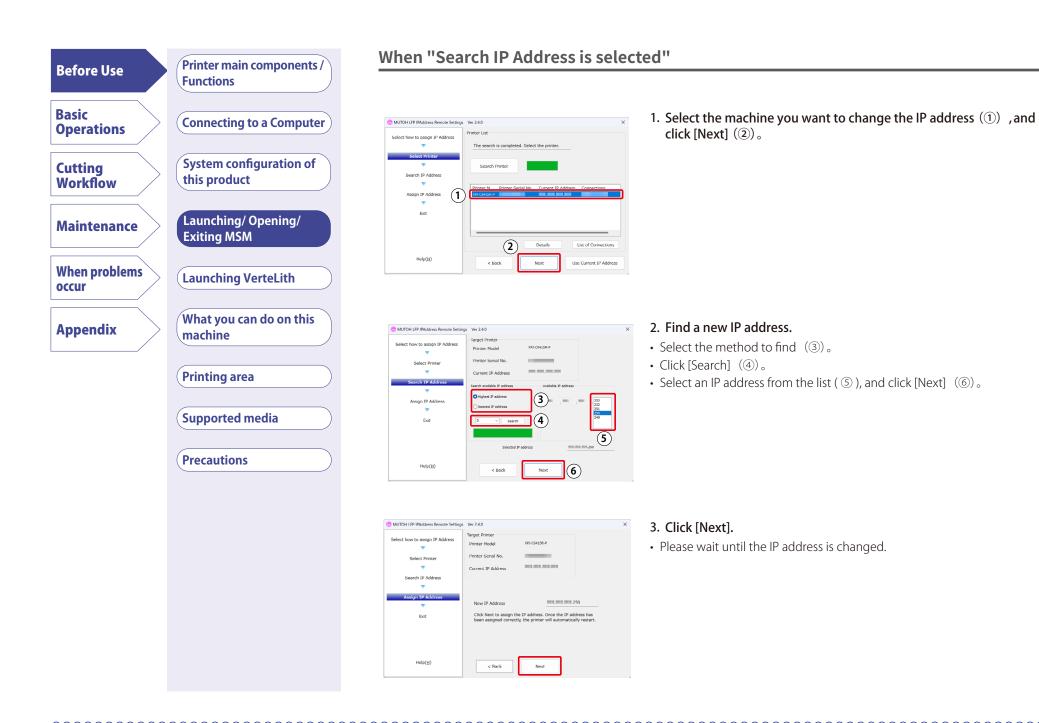


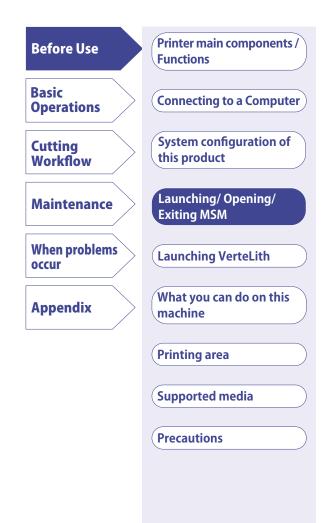


| ct how to assign IP Address | Welcome to MUTOH LFP Finder<br>The wizard will guide you through the process of setting the IP address to<br>the printer.<br>Please use this application after consulting with your network administrator. |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Select Printer              | Trease use this application area consulating with your network automation                                                                                                                                  |
| -                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Search IP Address           |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                             | Search IP Address                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Assign IP Address           | <ul> <li>You can search and select the available IP address<br/>on the network.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                 |
| -                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Exit                        | Specify IP Address manually<br>IP your network administrator has already assigned<br>you the IP address, select here.                                                                                      |
| Help( <u>H</u> )            | < Back Next                                                                                                                                                                                                |

4. Click [Search printer Assign/Change IP address].

- 5. MUTOH LFP Finder appears. Select the method to assign IP address and click [Next].
- **When "Search IP Address is selected"" P.31**
- **When "Specify IP Address manually" is selected" P.32**





| Select how to assign IP Address | Target Printer<br>Printer Model | XPJ-C641SR-P                  |  |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| •                               | Printer Model                   | APD-CONTER-P                  |  |
| Select Printer                  | Printer Serial No.              |                               |  |
| <b>•</b>                        | Current IP Address              |                               |  |
| Search IP Address               |                                 |                               |  |
| <b>•</b>                        |                                 |                               |  |
| Assign IP Address               |                                 |                               |  |
| •                               |                                 |                               |  |
|                                 | The IP address setti            | ng is successfully completed. |  |
| Exit                            |                                 |                               |  |
| Exit                            | Click Finish to exit th         | ne wizard.                    |  |
| Exit                            | Click Finish to exit th         | ne wizard.                    |  |
| Exit                            | Click Finish to exit th         | në wizard.                    |  |
| Exit                            | Click Finish to exit th         | në wizard.                    |  |

- 4. IP address has changed. Click [Finish] to exit MUTOH LFP Finder.
- 5. Once the IP address of the machine has changed, you will also need to change the IP address of the machine specified in MSM. Move to the following section.
  - Thanging the IP address registered in MSM" P.33

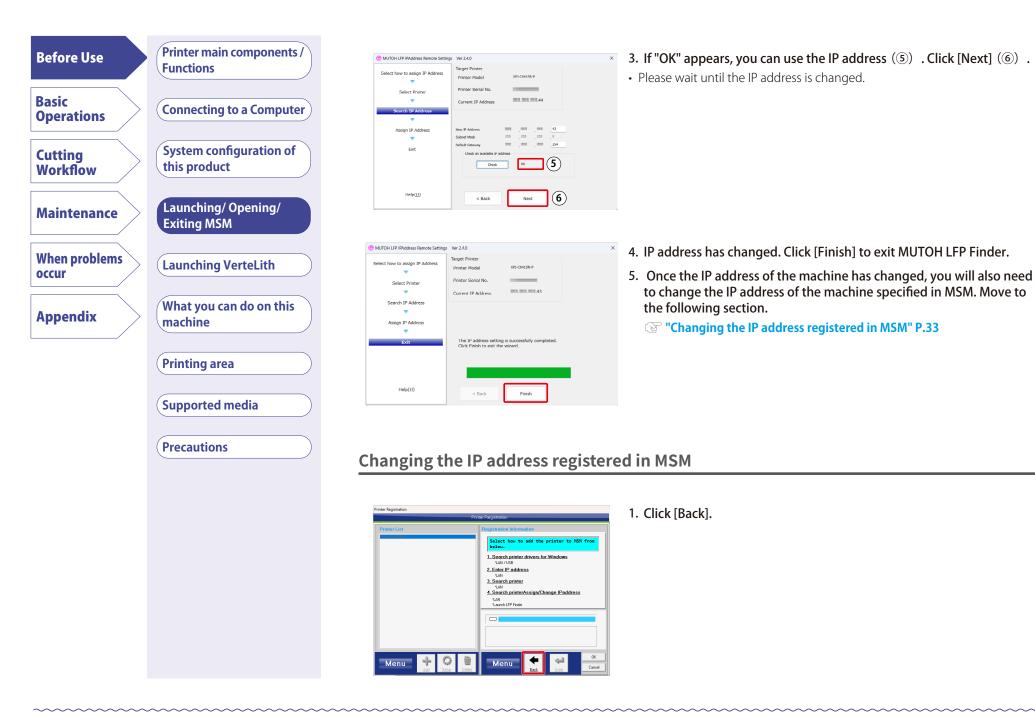
#### When "Specify IP Address manually" is selected

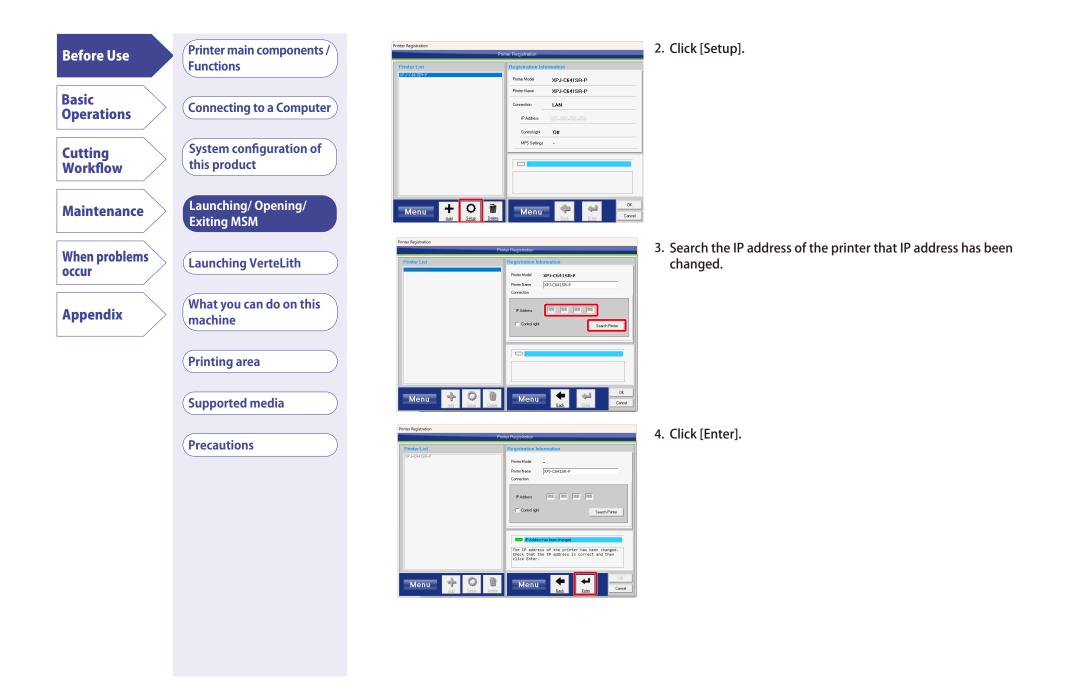
| MUTOH LFP IPAddress Remote Settin | ngs Ver 2.4.0                                                                | × |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| Select how to assign IP Address   | Printer List                                                                 |   |
| •                                 | The search is completed. Select the printer.                                 |   |
| Select Printer                    |                                                                              |   |
| •                                 | Search Printer                                                               |   |
| Search IP Address                 |                                                                              |   |
| Assign IP Address                 | Printer M., Printer Serial No. Current IP Address Connections<br>X9P-06138-P | _ |
|                                   |                                                                              |   |
|                                   |                                                                              | _ |
| Exit                              |                                                                              | 1 |
| •                                 |                                                                              |   |
| •                                 |                                                                              |   |
| •                                 | 2 Details List of Correction                                                 |   |

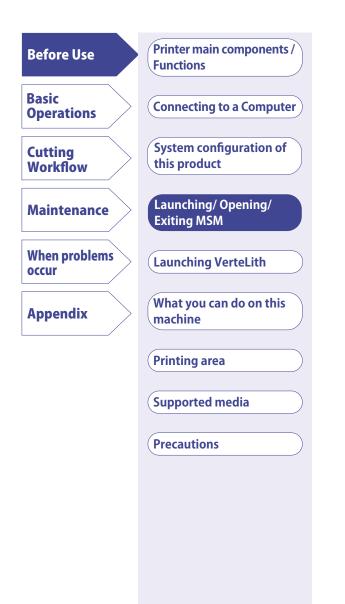
MUTOH LFP IPAddress Remote Settings Ver 2.4.0 Target Printer Select how to assign IP Address XPI-CG41SR-P Printer Model Printer Serial No. Select Printer Current IP Addres ch TP Add Assign IP Address 3 Subnet Mask Exit (4) Check Help(<u>H</u>) < Back Next

1. Select the machine you want to change the IP address  $(\textcircled{1})\;$  , and click [Next]  $(\textcircled{2})\;$  .

2. Enter a new IP address directly (③). Click [Check] (④) to check if the IP Address entered can be assigned for the machine.



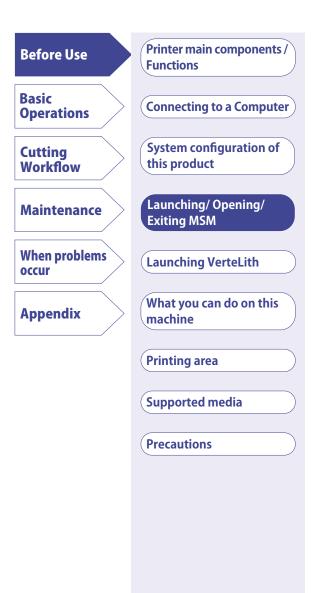






5. A confirmation dialog appears. Click [Yes].

6. The IP address change is complete. Click [OK] to exit the page.



### **Exiting MSM**

|   | Open      |        |          |  |
|---|-----------|--------|----------|--|
|   | Printer   | Regist | ration   |  |
|   | Exit      |        |          |  |
| ^ | <br>10 1- | j upo  | 1/1/2019 |  |

Windows 11 / Windows 10

1. Right click the MSM icon in the task tray, and click [Exit].

#### **Note**

While using your printer, do not exit MSM. To close the MSM window, click [Settings] - [Close].



# Launching VerteLith

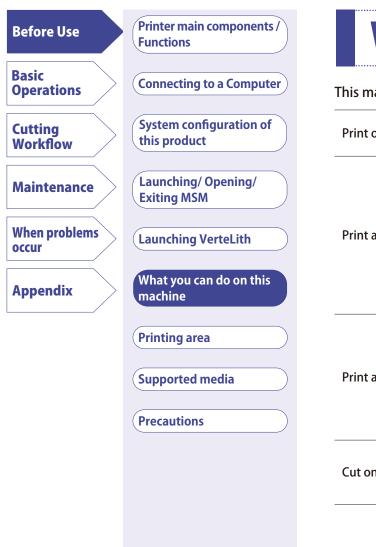


#### **Note**

Launching from the Start Menu of Windows

- Windows 11 / Windows 10
- From the [Start] menu, click [All Programs] (or [All Apps]) [MUTOH] [VerteLith].

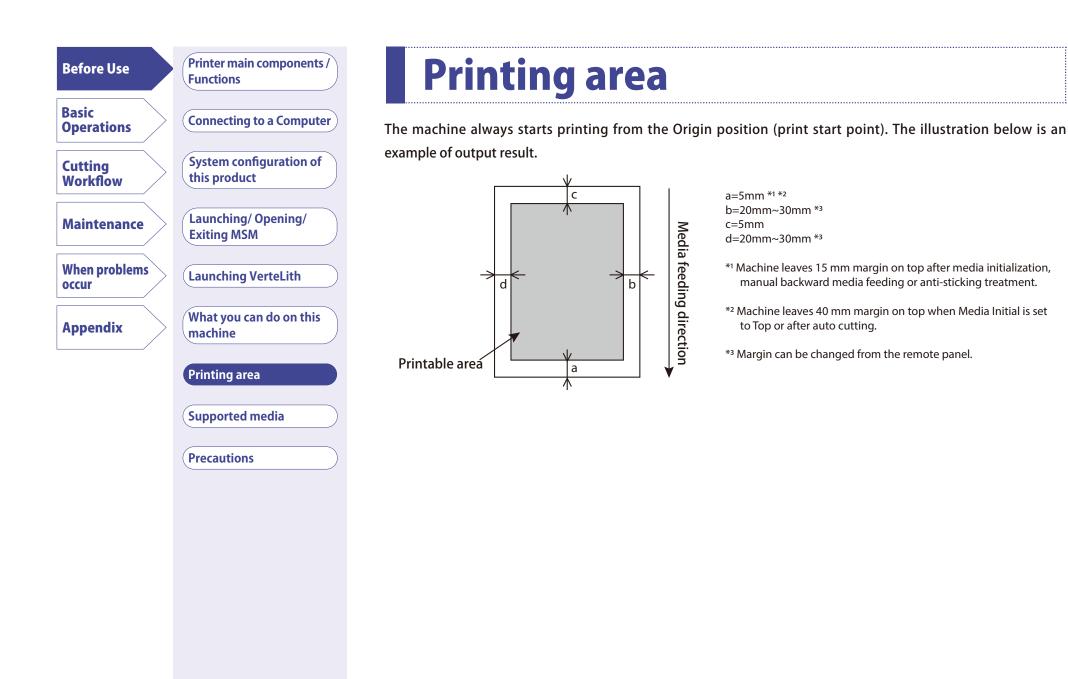
- Windows 11 / Windows 10
- 1. Double click the VerteLith icon on the Desktop.

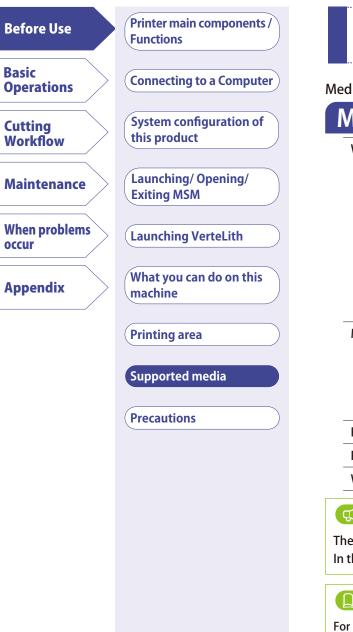


# What you can do on this machine

This machine can output the following four methods.

|                              | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Print only                   | Print a design.          Printing workflow" P.45                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Print and Cut separately     | This is used when you will remove the media after printing, laminate it or do other treatment and load it again for cutting. The crop mark is used for registration when reloading the media.<br>You will need output data for printing and cutting.<br>The crop mark is used for registration when reloading the media.<br>The crop mark is used for registration when reloading the media.<br>The crop mark is used for registration when reloading the media.<br>The crop mark is used for registration when reloading the media.<br>The crop mark is used for registration when reloading the media.<br>The crop mark is used for registration when reloading the media.<br>The crop mark is used for registration when reloading the media. |
| Print and Cut (Continuously) | Print a design and then cut it out.<br>You will need output data for printing and cutting.<br>Print & Cut" P.146<br>Important /<br>Cutting must be performed after the print is completely dry.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Cut only                     | This is used for cutting out stickers.<br>You will need output data for cutting.<br><b>Cut only" P.148</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |





# **Supported media**

Media that meet the requirements below can be used on this product.

| Width <sup>*1</sup>   |                   |                    | • 198 ~ 228 mm                                                                                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       |                   |                    | • 283 ~ 313 mm                                                                                         |
|                       |                   |                    | • 344 ~ 374 mm                                                                                         |
|                       |                   |                    | • $394 \sim 424  \text{mm}$                                                                            |
|                       |                   |                    | • 444 $\sim$ 474 mm                                                                                    |
|                       |                   |                    | • 494 $\sim$ 524 mm                                                                                    |
|                       |                   |                    | • $602 \sim 630^{*2}$ mm                                                                               |
|                       |                   |                    | <sup>*1</sup> Common to cut sheet and roll media.                                                      |
|                       |                   |                    | <sup>*2</sup> Maximum width (For a roll media, width of paper care or media whichever is greater).     |
| Maximum thickness     | For printing only | Head height "Low": | 0.4 mm                                                                                                 |
|                       |                   | 5                  | (Maximum thickness that media can pass througl the media path: 0.8 mm)                                 |
|                       | For cutting       |                    | 0.4 mm (including media <sup>*3</sup> and backing material)<br><sup>*3</sup> Thickness of film 0.22 mm |
| Roll media outer diam | ieter             |                    | up to 150 mm                                                                                           |
| Paper core diameter   |                   |                    | 2 inches or 3 inches                                                                                   |
| Weight                |                   |                    | up to 9 kg                                                                                             |

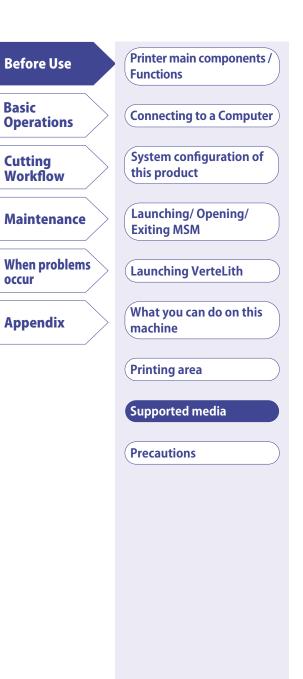
#### G Important!

The default head height is set to "Low".

In the "Low" setting, media up to 0.4 mm thick can be loaded on the printer.

#### **Note**

For recommended media, please contact your local MUTOH dealer.



# Media handling cautions

Note the following points when handling the media.

• Use the media under an appropriate environment. The appropriate temperature and humidity for printing are as follows.

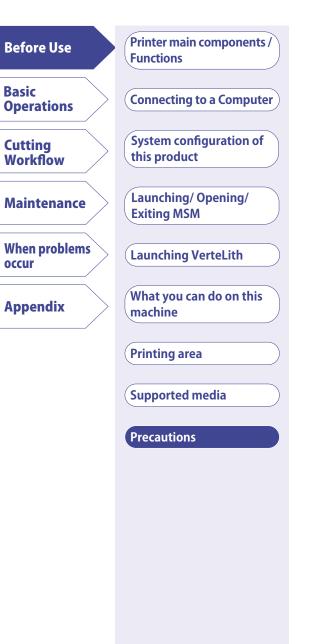
| Recommended Printing Environment | Temperature: 22° C to 30° C<br>Humidity: 40% to 60%, No condensation |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rate of change                   | Temperature: within 2° C per hour<br>Humidity: within 5% per hour    |

- Do not use folded, scratched, torn, and rolled media.
- The size of media can change according to changes in humidity in the printing environment. Before using media, rest it in the printing environment for 1 hour to adapt it to the environment. Printing without adapting media to the printing environment may cause media jams due to gaps or wrinkles in the media. Print quality is also affected.
- When using this machine in a low-humidity environment, the cut media may get stuck and may not come down. In such a case, open the front cover after the media is cut and remove it.
- Do not touch the print side. Moisture and oil on your hands may affect the print quality.
- Do not leave media loaded in the printer for a long time. Some media has winding curls, causing media jams and degradation of print quality. Avoid using such media especially in winter or in dry conditions.
- Do not discard the original packaging box and plastic bag of roll media. You will use them for storing media.

## Precaution on storing media after use

When storing roll media after use, follow these precautions to avoid print defects caused by cockling.

- After removing your roll media from the scroller, wind it back onto the roll properly and put it in the original plastic bag. Then store it in the package it came in.
- Avoid high temperature, high humidity, and direct sunlight when storing media.
- Keep the media dry.



# Precautions

# Please use this printer regularly

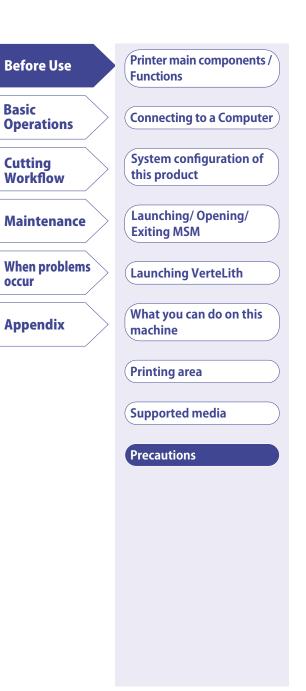
Mutoh recommends to use this printer at least once a week.

If the printer is not used for a long time, the print head could get clogged, causing damage to the printer.

# Please handle ink cartridge carefully

- Before using the ink cartridge for the first time, be sure to read the Safety Data Sheet (SDS) before carrying out any work.
- Do not disassemble the ink cartridge. If disassembled, the ink may get into the eyes or on the skin, causing irritation or allergic reactions.
- When handling ink cartridges, be careful not to get ink in your eyes or on your skin. If in eyes or on skin, immediately flush with water. If left untreated, it could result in bloodshot eyes or mild inflammation. If abnormality persists, seek medical advice immediately.
- Do not drop the ink cartridge or hit it hard. Ink may leak.
- Ink should be used up within the expiration date. Expired ink should be disposed of as industrial waste, and empty ink cartridges should be put in plastic bags and disposed of in accordance with local ordinances and municipal regulations.
- Use MUTOH genuine ink.

This product is designed to get the best performance of the product by using MUTOH genuine inks. Use of non-genuine ink may adversely affect the product itself and print quality.



# Please conduct maintenance regularly

This product requires regular user maintenance.

- Run a nozzle check before printing. If the nozzles are clogged, run a head cleaning.
- Clean the cleaning wiper and the parts around the print head once a week.
- Clean the inside the machine once a month.

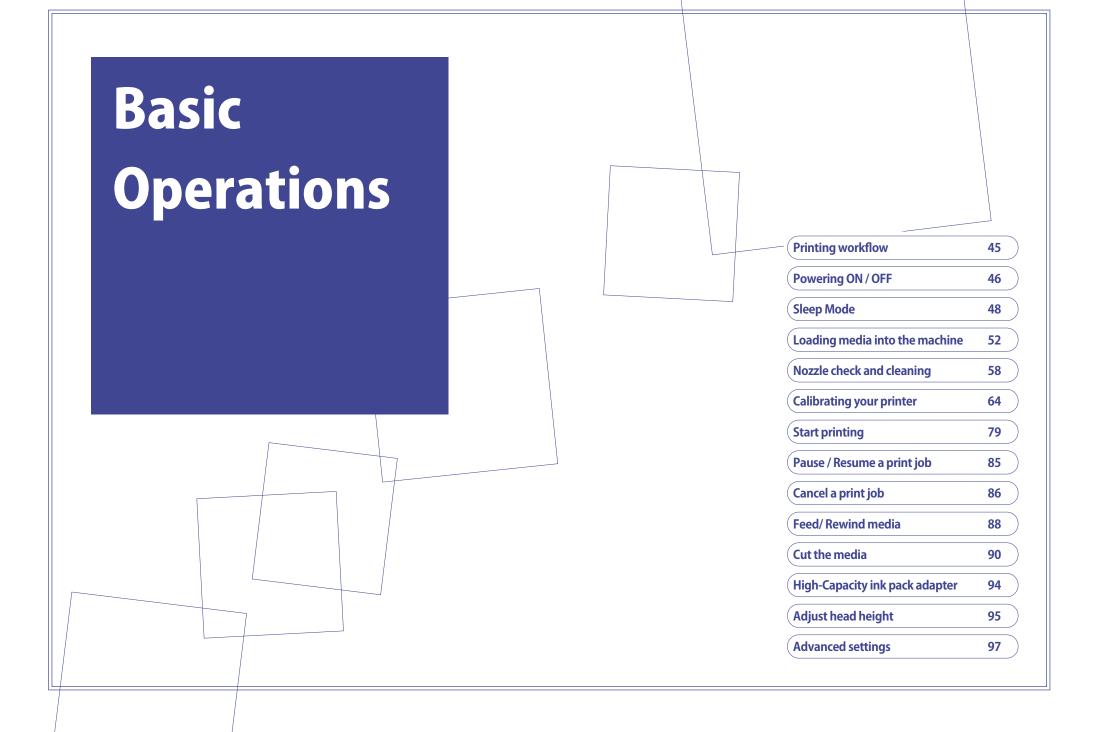
# Some parts need to be replaced periodically

In this product, the following parts must be replaced after a long-term use.

• User replaceable parts:

Flushing box pad, Blade for sheet cutter, Blade for contour cutter, Blade holder, Cutting mat, Cleaning wiper, Plug for high-capacity ink pack adapter

• Parts required to be replaced by service personnel: Motors, Pumps, Print heads





# **Printing workflow**

The following is the basic operation flow for printing.

#### **1.** Turn on the machine.

**Turning the power ON" P.46** 

#### 2. Load media into the machine.

 $\circledast$  "Loading media into the machine" P.52

## 3. Run a nozzle check (perform cleaning if needed).

INozzle check and cleaning" P.58

## 4. Perform printing quality calibrations(if needed).

Trailibrating your printer" P.64

## 5. Print a design.

• We will introduce the printing procedure using MUTOH RIP software "VerteLith".

The second secon

## 6. End the printing operation.



# **Powering ON / OFF**

# Turning the power ON

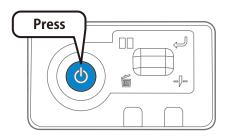


Close the front cover.



#### Press the power button on this machine.

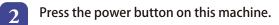
- The blue lamp on the panel lights up.
- Machine initialization begins.





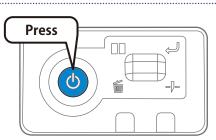
# **Turning the power OFF**

Check that printing has finished.



• The blue lamp on the panel turns off.

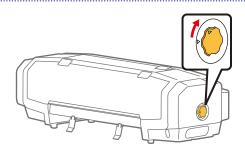
• The machine begins powering off.

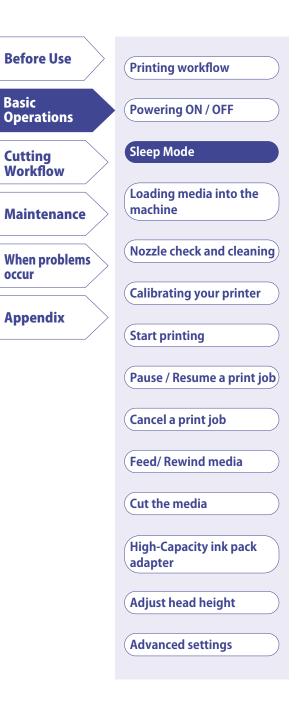


Turn the media fixing handle to unlock it.

# C Important!!

- If the media fixing handle remains locked, the error LED turns on and you cannot turn off the machine. Make sure to unlock it.
- When you are not using the machine while it is powered on, unlock the media fixing handle.





# Sleep Mode

While in sleep mode, the machine performs following automatically:

- power saving
- scheduled automatic head cleaning

#### C Important!

If you are going to put the machine in sleep mode for more than 7 days, perform followings once a week:

- Check the ink level in the ink cartridges. When the message [Ink Low] appears on the control panel, replace with new ones.
- Run a nozzle check. If nozzle clogs, perform head cleaning.

# To start and end sleep mode

## 1. Putting the machine into sleep mode

1 Check that

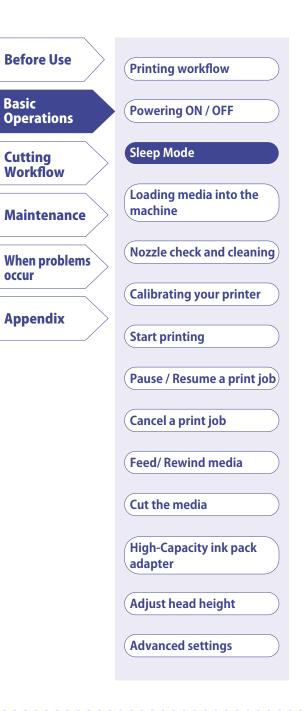
2

- the front cover is closed.
- ink cartridges have sufficient ink.
- the waste ink tank has enough space.
- the media fixing handle is unlocked.

#### G Important!!

If you are going to leave the printer in sleep mode for a long period of time, empty the waste ink tank.

Start MSM and open the remote panel.





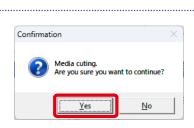
#### In the Sleep Mode option, click [Start].

• A confirmation message appears.



#### • The machine is put into sleep mode.

Data LED blinks while in sleep mode.



Stop

ing 💌

ter Status | Printer Control | Media Setting | Contour Cutting Settings | Advanced Setting | Other Setting

Lever Up No Hedia In sleep mode

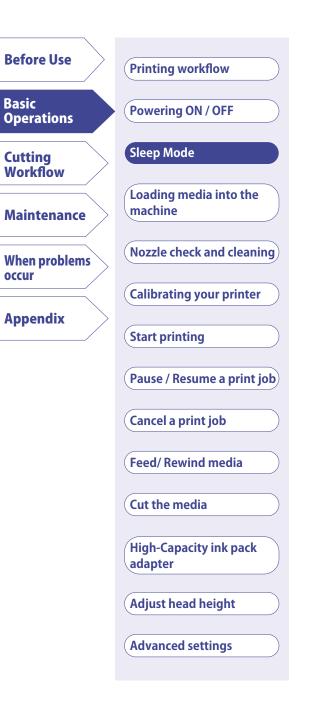
2024-10-14 12:00 2024-10-14 12:00 2024-10-14 12:00

#### \_\_\_\_\_

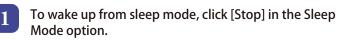
**Note** 

#### G Important!!

If the media fixing handle remains locked, the error LED turns on and you cannot put the machine into sleep mode. Make sure to unlock it.



#### 2. Waking from sleep mode



• A confirmation message appears.



• The machine is woke up from sleep mode.

# Confirmation X Sleep Mode Cancel. Are you sure you want to continue?

.

Interval : 😥 💌 [sec]

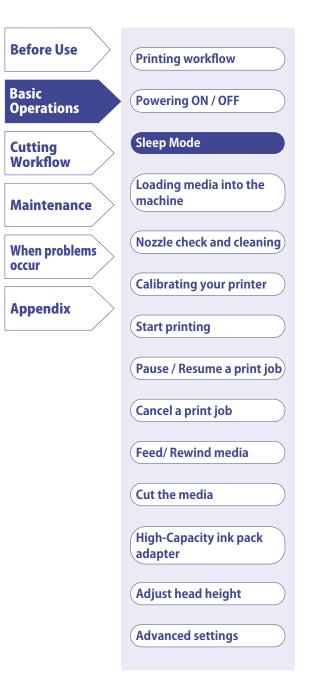
Wam-Up Cancel Start

-DD-HH:NN) Contents 1:54 Ready to Print

30 KI 86 FI

#### **Note**

Depending on the elapsed time, this product may perform automatic head cleaning or ink charging when waking from sleep mode. This is due to automatic maintenance function, not the sleep mode settings.



#### 3. Setting a timer for automatic head cleaning

You can set a timer for automatic head cleaning to be performed during sleep mode.



To change the timer for cleaning during sleep mode, select time interval from the Cleaning Timer option in the Sleep Mode menu.



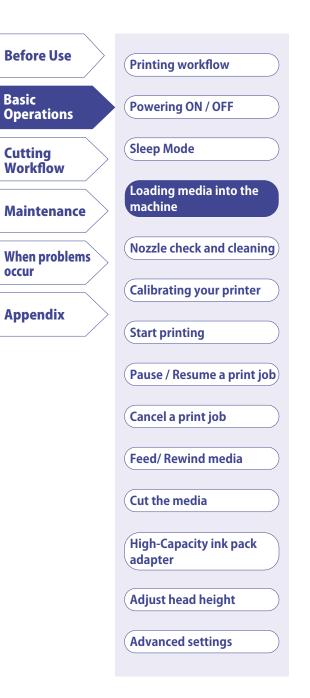
#### Click [Update].

• Timer has set.



#### **Note**

Cleaning mode for head cleaning can be changed from the Cleaning Mode option in the Advanced Setting tab.



# Loading media into the machine

Follow these steps.

# Loading a roll media into the printer

#### 1. Loading a roll media onto the spindle

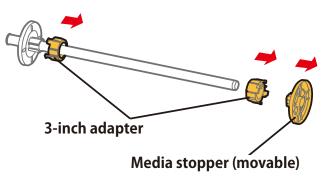
Items Required:

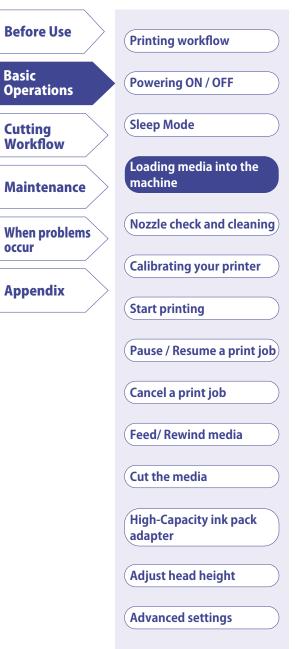
- Roll media: x1
- Scroller: x1

Remove the 3-inch adapters and the media stopper (movable) from the scroller.

#### Note

If you are using a roll media with 3-inch paper core, leave the 3-inch adapters attached.





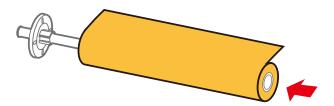


2

Load the roll media onto the scroller.

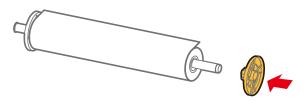
#### 🔲 Note

Load the roll media so that the winding direction of media is as shown in the illustration.



3

Push the media stopper tightly into the roll media until there is no gap between the media and the stopper.

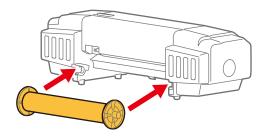


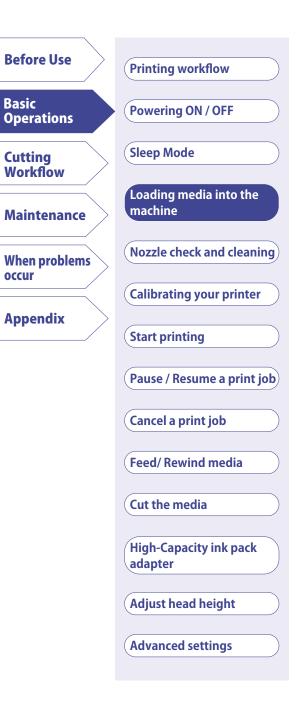
## 2. Placing the roll media onto the scroller holder

Place the scroller onto the media holder.

#### ( **Note** )

Place it so that the media stopper (movable) is on the right side when looking from the rear side of the machine.





## 3. Loading the media into the machine

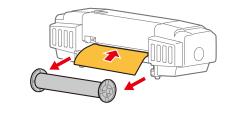


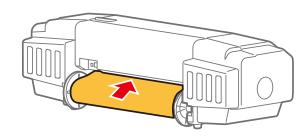
- Turn the media fixing handle to unlock it.
- The pinch rollers raise.

# 2 Insert the leading edge of roll media into the media slot.

#### G Important /

When loading a cut sheet, remove the scroller and roll media from the machine first and then load the sheet.





Open the front cover.

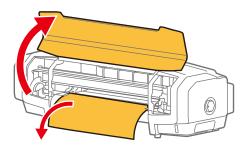
• From the front side of the machine, pull the media.

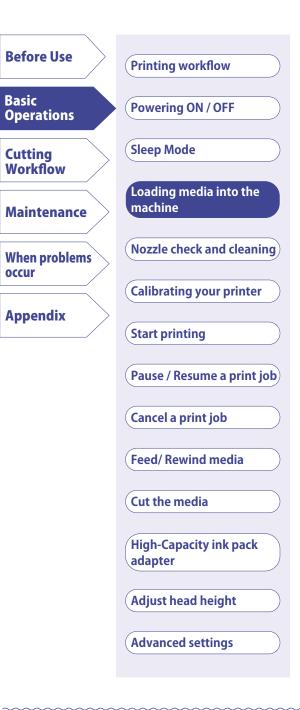
#### 🛄 Note

3

Remove warp on the media.

For roll media, turn the scroller to slightly rewind the media onto the roll.



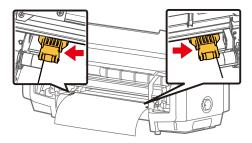




#### Move the pinch roller arms to the both end of media.

- Make sure to check that the pinch roller arms are raised (in UP position).
- Hold the base of the arm and slowly move it. If the movement is heavy, move the arm while holding the printer.



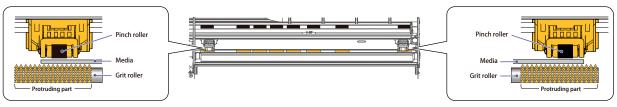


#### G Important!

Please check the following important notes for the pinch roller and media set-up position. Pinch rollers can get damaged if there are not positioned correctly.

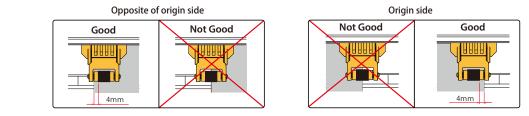
• The pinch roller and media are on the protruding part of the grit roller.

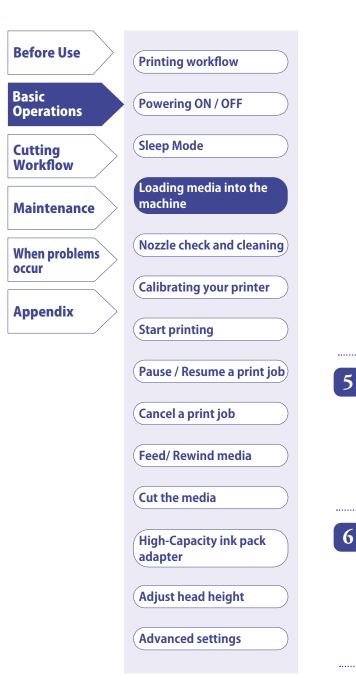
(The black labels on the Y rail indicate the position of protruding part of the grit roller. Please use this as a guide when checking.)



• Position the pinch roller so that the distance between the edge of the media and the edge of the rubber of the pinch roller is approximately 4 mm. If it exceeds 4 mm, refer to the next page and set the side margins.

• Make sure the rubber part of the pinch roller does not go beyond the media. Pinch rollers can get damaged if media is fed while the pinch rollers contact the protruding part of the grit roller.





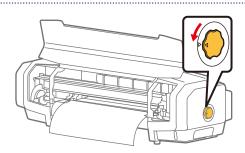
• If the distance between the edge of the media and the edge of the rubber of the pinch roller is more than 4 mm, change the side margin. The illustration below is an example when the distance is 4 mm and 10 mm.

| Side margin settings                                                                                                                                                                 | Opposite of origin side | Origin side |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| <ul> <li>If the edge of the rubber of the pinch roller is at 4 mm from<br/>the edge of the media</li> <li>Side margin = 20 mm (default side margin) or more</li> </ul>               |                         | 4mm         |
| <ul> <li>If the edge of the rubber of the pinch roller is at 10 mm from<br/>the edge of the media</li> <li>Side margin = 26 mm (default side margin 20 mm + 6 mm) or more</li> </ul> |                         |             |

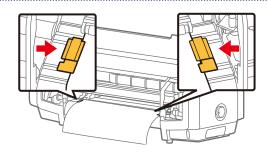
#### Note

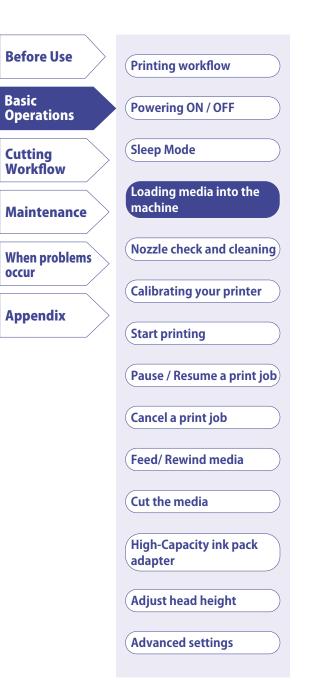
You can specify the side margin in [Media Setting] on MSM. For details, see the MUTOH Status Monitor Operation Manual.

- Turn the media fixing handle to lock it.
- The pinch rollers lower.



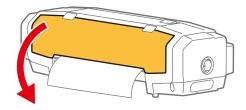
- Place the edge holders on both ends of the media.
  - Slide them from both sides and place on the ends of the media.







Close the front cover.



# Loading a cut sheet into the machine

For how to load a cut sheet, follow the same procedure as "Loading the media into the machine". 3. Loading the media into the machine" P.54

To load a cut sheet that has crop marks, you will need to adjust the position. "Step2. Cut" P.144

#### G Important!

For the required cut sheet size and margins for an image with crop marks, see the following section. **Required media size for automatic detection of crop marks**" P.137



# **Nozzle check and cleaning**

## Run a nozzle check

Before you start daily operation, run a nozzle check. If nozzles are clogged, perform cleaning.

This machine offers the following nozzle check menus:

- Nozzle Check: Prints a nozzle check pattern using the settings specified in the Nozzle Area Select option in the Advanced Setting tab.
- "Nozzle check steps" P.60
- Nozzle Check F: Prints a nozzle check pattern using all nozzles.

"Nozzle check F steps" P.58

#### Nozzle check F steps



Start MSM and open the remote panel.

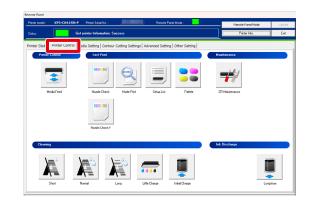
The second secon

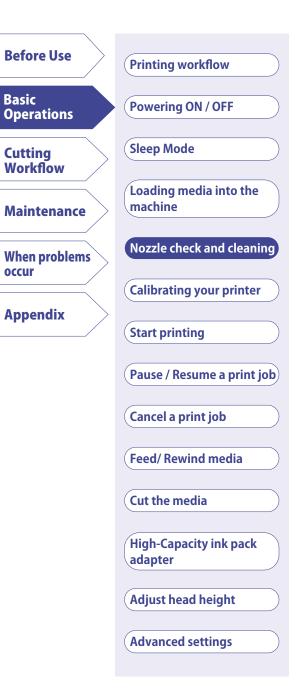


3

Click the Printer Control tab.

• The Printer Control tab page opens.

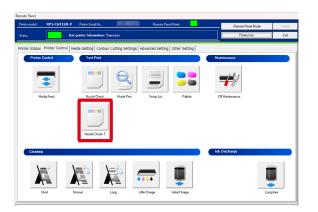






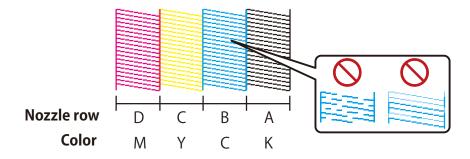
#### Click [Nozzle Check F] in the Test Print menu.

• The machine begins printing a nozzle check pattern.



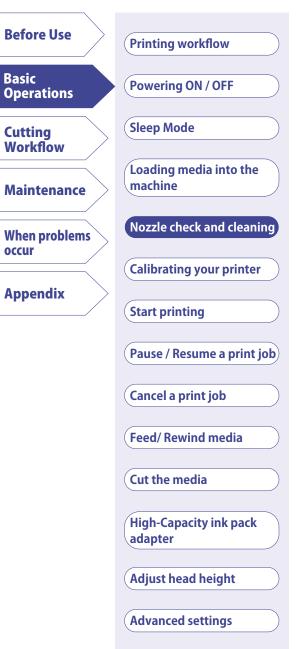
#### 5 Check the nozzle check print.

- If you see nozzle clogging (missing line) or thin lines on the print, go to "Head cleaning" P.62.
- If all lines are clearly printed, you can start printing.



#### **Note**

Printer information (date and time printed, serial number, firmware version) is printed next to the pattern.



#### Nozzle check steps



Load media to print a nozzle check pattern. **The Second Seco** 



Start MSM and open the remote panel. "Launching/ Opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



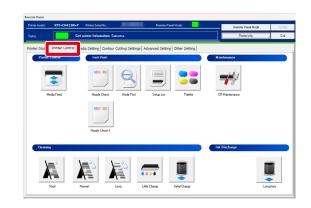
#### Click the Printer Control tab.

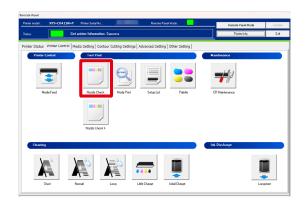
• The Printer Control tab page opens.

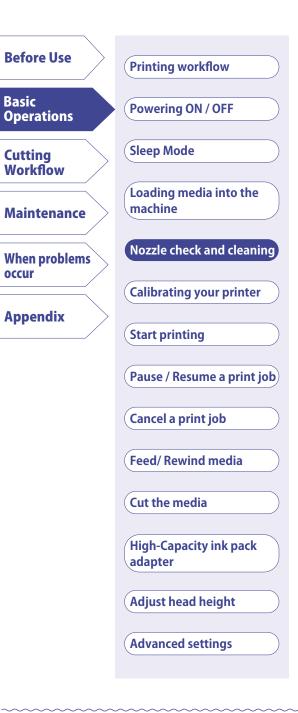


#### Click [Nozzle Check] in the Test Print menu.

• The machine begins printing a nozzle check pattern.



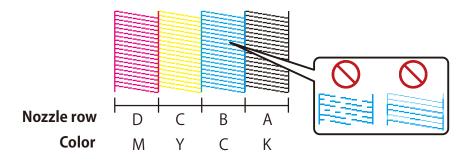






#### Check the nozzle check print.

- If you find missing or thin lines on the print, go to "Head cleaning" P.62.
- If all lines are clearly printed, you can start printing.



#### **Note**

- The above illustration is an example of pattern with Nozzle Area Select set to "Nozzle ALL".
- Use MSM to set the Nozzle Area Select option.
- Printer information (date and time printed, serial number, firmware version, Nozzle Area Select setting) is printed next to the pattern.

#### G Important!

If you run a nozzle check print immediately after initial ink charging is complete, the following symptom may appear.

- Lines are blurred
- Image is partially not printed

In such cases, perform the "Little Charge" cleaning from [Printer Control] - [Cleaning] in MSM. Then print and check the result. If there is no improvement, leave the printer for at least one hour and then perform a head cleaning or "Little Charge" cleaning. Once finished, print an image again.

If the problem still persists, please contact your local MUTOH dealer.



# **Head cleaning**

Start MSM and open the remote panel.



1

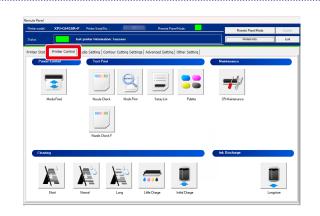
#### Click the Printer Control tab.

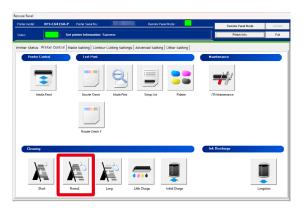
• The Printer Control tab page opens.



#### From the Cleaning menu, click [Normal].

• Head cleaning begins.







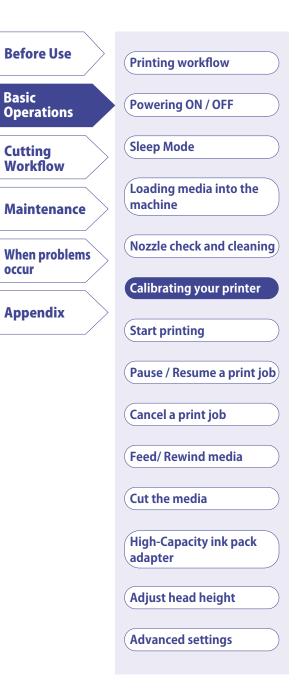


- Run a nozzle check print again. Run a nozzle check" P.58
- If nozzle clogging persists, repeat the Normal cleaning.
- For "Short", "Long", "Little Charge" and "Initial Charge" cleanings, see "Head Cleaning" p147.

#### Note

4

If nozzle clogs after "Long" or "Little Charge" cleaning attempt, you can select the nozzles that do not suffer from clogging from the Nozzle Area Select menu in the Advance Setting tab in MSM to continue printing.



# **Calibrating your printer**

The print quality calibration must be performed before you print for the first time.

# Print quality calibration ("Adjust Print")

Make sure to run this calibration when

- you use this product for the first time
- you change to the different types of media

Calibration is not required in cases other than those listed above. Move to "Nozzle check and cleaning" P.58.

This calibration adjusts dot placement position in bidirectional printing. "Adjust Print" has following menus:

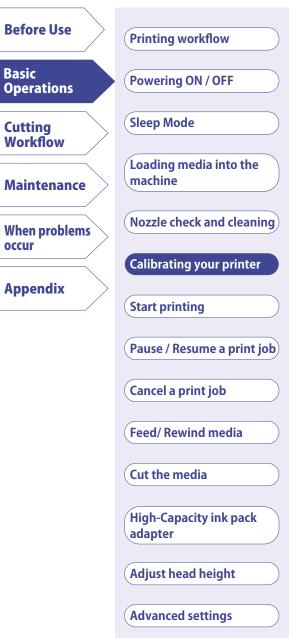
| Auto   | The color sensor reads the adjustment pattern print and the printer runs automatic calibration.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Custom | Print an adjustment pattern and enter the number of the pattern that looks most aligned.<br>This menu calibrates the dot placement position for all print modes. Print quality can be optimized<br>even if the print mode selected in the RIP software and the printer are different. |

#### 🛄 Note

To print an adjustment pattern, more than 550 mm of printable area is required. If less than 550 mm, calibration cannot be performed.

#### Adjustment pattern for each print mode

| print mode    | pattern   |
|---------------|-----------|
| Super Quality |           |
| High Quality  | Pattern F |
| Production    |           |
| High Speed    | Pattern D |



#### Print quality (Adjust Print) calibration steps

#### **For Auto calibration**

Load a roll media. Toading media into the machine" P.52

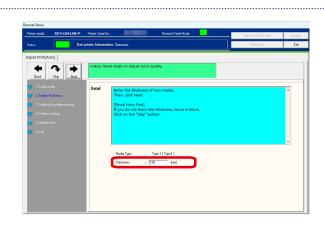
2

Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM "P.27

3 Go to the Media Setting tab > Adjust > Adjust Print (Auto) and click [Start].

#### Enter the thickness of media.

- Enter the thickness of media  $\cite{[}\mu m\cite{]}$  loaded.



19 Contour Cutting Settings Advanced Setting Other Setting Plug Life

Start

• Start

Type 1 (Type1 ) 🕨 🕨

Start

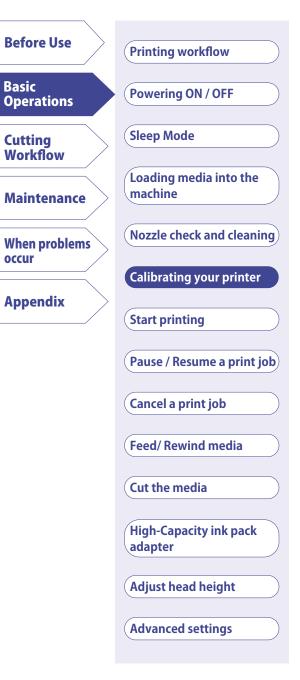
1-2. Initial Chary

21. Polton Print

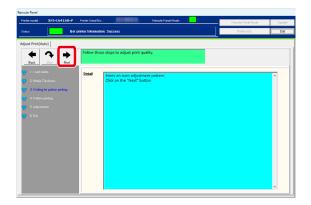
: • • 0 .0 (mm)

Stat

500 • [mn] Stat



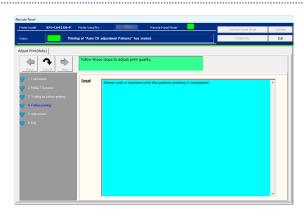






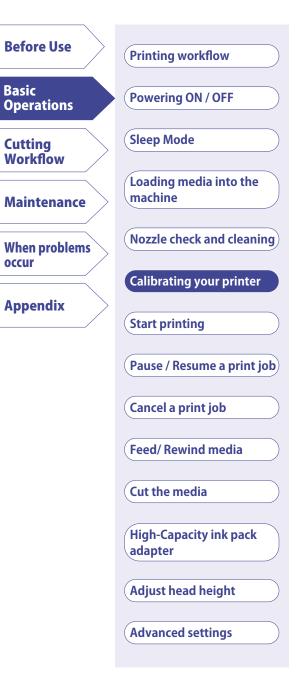
#### The machine begins printing a pattern.

• The color sensor reads the adjustment pattern print and the machine runs automatic calibration.



#### **Note**

- If failed in the middle of the calibration, the adjustment value for the pattern which has been successfully calibrated will be saved in the printer, but the adjustment value for the pattern which has been failed to calibrate or has not been calibrated yet will not be saved in the printer.
- If performing the auto calibration does not improve print quality (banding or graininess appears), run an [Auto] calibration again or perform [Custom] calibration.
- **"For Custom calibration" P.67**

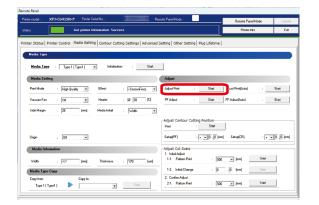


#### For Custom calibration

#### 1. Check print quality



Go to the Media Setting tab > Adjust > Adjust Print and click [Start].



| mote Panel Viriter model: XPJ-C6415R-P Printer Serial No. :                                                                           | Remote Panel Mode :                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Get printer Information: Success                                                                                                      | Printer Info. E                                                                                                                                                                            |
| rinter Status Adjustment Print                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Back     Net     Net     Net     Net                                                                                                  | 3. Koush Adustment                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Set the media thickness.<br>If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.                                                         | Parforms rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has omaliest misaignment.     *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.                 |
| Mode Type         Turnet 1 ( Turnet 1 )           Thickness         [200 [um]]         Set                                            | 2-1. Patern Pilot : Stat                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Confirm Adjustment     Performs confirm adjustment.     Crack the patient result and perform rough adjustment or fine     adjustment, | A 6 9 8 6 9 C 6 9 0 6 9<br>4 6 9 6 9 6 9 9 6 9<br>4 6 9 6 9 6 9 9 6 9<br>4 Micro Adjustment                                                                                                |
| Pollow Print : Stat                                                                                                                   | Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment.<br>*The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.                  |
|                                                                                                                                       | 3-1. Pattern Pant : Start                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                                                       | 32. Adjustment Value         Get           A 4         B 4         C         4         D 4         w           C 4         W         F 4         w         w         w         w         w |



#### In [1. Media Thickness], enter the thickness of media.

• Enter the thickness of media ([µm]) loaded and click [Set].





#### In [2. Confirm Adjustment], click [Start].

• The machine begins printing a pattern.

# Name Description Description

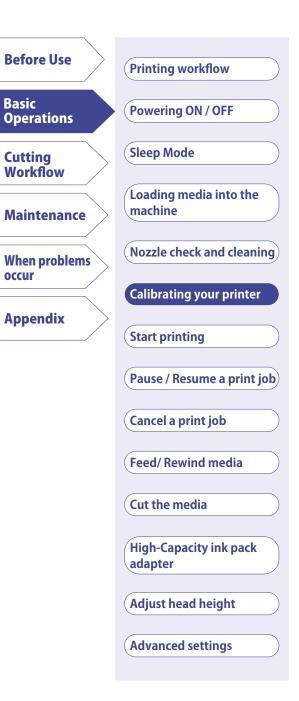
4 Look at the results of pattern A to pattern F. If there is any misalignment, move to "2. Print quality rough adjustment" P.69.

Aligned Misaligned Misaligned Hisaligned

#### • In the example of illustration below, the pattern A has misalignment.

#### 🛄 Note

The color of the rough adjustment and micro adjustment patterns is the same as this one.



#### 2. Print quality rough adjustment



2

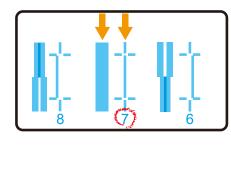
In [3. Rough Adjustment], click [Start] from [3-1 Pattern Print].

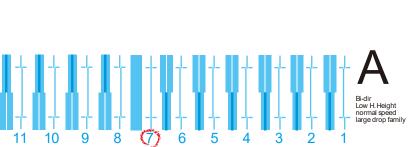
• The machine begins printing a pattern.

| emote Panel                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printer model: XPJ-C641SR-P Printer Serial No. :                                                             | Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Update                                                                                                                                 |
| Status: Get printer Information: Success                                                                     | Printer Info. Exit                                                                                                                                                           |
| Printer Status Adjustment Print   Performs adjustment prints. Perform the adjustments by your media type.    |                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Back Neet  Hedia Thickness  Set the media thickness.                                                         | Routh Adjustment Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the                                                                                          |
| If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.  Heda Type : Type 1 (Type1 )                               | number that has smallest misalignment, *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns. 2.1. Pattern Pirk : Stat                                                |
| Thickness         : [170         [un]         Set           2. Confirm Adjustment                            | 2-2. Adjustment Value : Sot<br>A 5 • B 5 • C 6 • D 5 •                                                                                                                       |
| Performs confirm adjustment.<br>Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine<br>adjustment, | E B V F B V · V                                                                                                                                                              |
| Paten Pint : Stat                                                                                            | Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and select the<br>number that has smallest misalignment.<br>"The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns. |
|                                                                                                              | 31. Pattern Print : Start 32. Adjustment Value : Sat                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                              | A a y 0 a y C a y 0 a y<br>E a y F a y y y y                                                                                                                                 |

Find and mark the number written under the pattern that has the least misalignment in the pattern A.

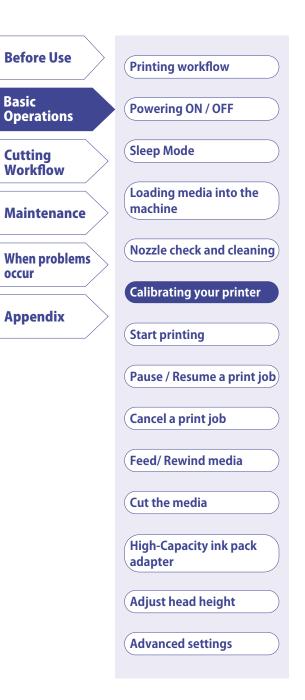
• The same patterns (A to F) are printed on both sides and the center of the media.





#### **Note**

The number that has the least misalignment may be different between the edge of media and the center of media even if it has the same pattern name. In such case, look for the number that seems to have the least misalignment on average.





Mark the numbers for patterns B to F in the same way.



In [3-2 Adjustment Value], enter the number you marked for the patterns A to F and then click [Set].

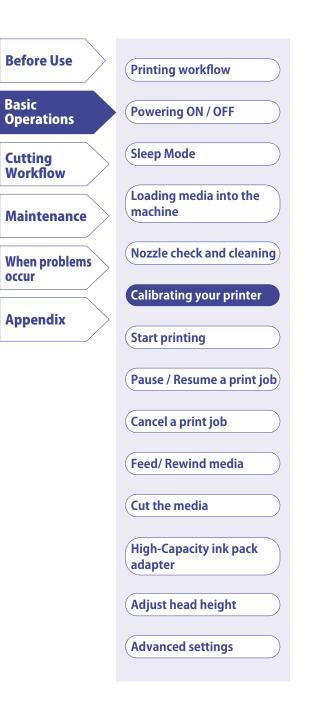
Move to "3. Print quality micro adjustment" P.70

| Ninter model: XPJ-C641SR-P Printer Social No. :                                                                                                                            | Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Upda                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Adjustment Print: Started to print patterns                                                                                                                                | Pinter Info. Exit                                                                                                                                                             |
| Inter Status Adjustment Print           Back         Performs adjustment prints.           Performs dejustment prints.         Perform the adjustments by your media type. |                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 1. Media Thickness                                                                                                                                                         | 2. Rough Adjustment                                                                                                                                                           |
| Set the media thickness.<br>If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.                                                                                              | Parforms rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the<br>number that has smallest misalignment.<br>*The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns. |
| Media Type         Type 1 (Type1)           Thickness         : [170 [um]                                                                                                  | 21. Pateen Plint : Start<br>22. Adjustment Value : Sot                                                                                                                        |
| 2. Confirm Adjurtment                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Performs confirm adjustment.<br>Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine<br>adjustment,                                                               | A 6 8 8 6 C 6 0 6 F 6 V 7 6 V 7 1                                                                                                                                             |
| Pattern Pink : Stat                                                                                                                                                        | Partorms line adjustment. Check the printed result and select the<br>number that has smallest misalignment.<br>*The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.  |
|                                                                                                                                                                            | 3-1. Paten Pint : Start                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                            | 3-2. Adjustment Value : Sct                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                               |

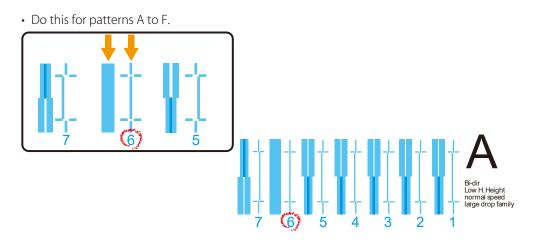
#### 3. Print quality micro adjustment

- In [4. Micro Adjustment], click [Start] from [4-1 Pattern Print].
  - The machine prints the patterns A to F.

| Piinter model: XPJ-C641SR-P Piinter Serial No. :                                                                                      | Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Upd                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Statue: Get printer Information: Success                                                                                              | Printer Info. Ex                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Printer Status Adjustment Print<br>Back Performs adjustment prints.<br>Perform the adjustments by your media type.                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Hedia Thickness     Get the media thickness.     If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.                                    | 2. Rough Adjustment<br>Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the<br>number that has smallest misalignment.<br>"The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Noão Type : Type 1 (Type1 ) Thickness : 170 (unit                                                                                     | 21.     Patien Print     :     Stat       22.     Adjustment Value     :     Sec                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Confine Adjustment     Performs confirm adjustment.     Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine     adjustment, |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Pattern Päez : Stat                                                                                                                   | Performs fine adjustment, check the printed result and select the<br>number that has smallest misaignment.<br>"The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                                                       | 11         Pattern Find         Statt         .         Statt         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .         .          .         . |



Find and mark the number written under the pattern that has the least misalignment in each pattern like you did in [3. Rough Adjustment].

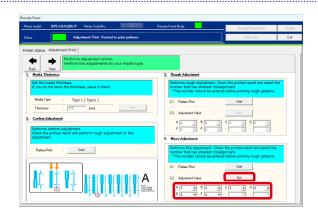


In [4-2 Adjustment value], enter the number you marked for patterns A to F and then click [Set].

2

3

• The print quality calibration is now completed.





## Media Feed Adjustment

This adjustment corrects the media feed amount.

Make sure to run this adjustment when

- you use this product for the first time
- you changed to the different types of media

When the following symptom appears on your prints, you should run this adjustment:

- Images are overlapping.
- White lines appear in an image.

Other than above case, there is no need to perform this adjustment. Move to "Nozzle check and cleaning" P.58. You will need a ruler for this adjustment.

## Media feed adjustment steps

#### **Note**

To print an adjustment pattern, more than 400 mm of printable area is required. If less than 400 mm, calibration cannot be performed.

#### 1 Load a roll media.

**The Second Seco** 



Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM" P.27





Go to the Media Setting tab > Adjust > PF Adjust (Auto) and click [Start].

• The PF Adjust page opens.

# 4 Click [Next].

5

• The machine automatically performs media feed adjustment.

```
        Mach Rel
        Water Status
        New York ($150.00
        Water Status
        Result Preside
        Result Preside
        Low

        Color
        Get point Indexedion: Scores
        Der lot
        Get
        Der lot
        Get

        Prive datus
        Finance Central Media Schtting
        Color Cutting Schtring
        Advanced Setting
        Oder Setting
        Result Prive
        Get

        Media Tore
        Type 1 (Symt)
        Index Schtring
        Advanced Setting
        Oder Setting
        Advant

        Media Tore
        Type 1 (Symt)
        Index Schtring
        Media
        Similar
        Similar

        Media Tore
        Type 1 (Symt)
        Index Schtring
        Media
        Media
        Similar

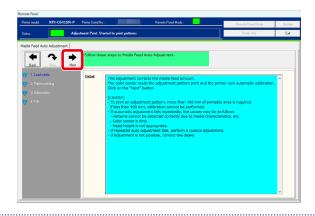
        Media Tore
        Type 1 (Symt)
        Index Schtring
        Media
        Media
        Similar

        Media Tore
        Type 1 (Symt)
        Index Schtring
        Media
        Media
        Similar
        Similar

        Media Tore
        Type 1 (Symt)
        Index Schtring
        Media
        Media
        Similar
        Similar

        Media
        Tore
        Tore
        Media
        Similar
        Media
        Similar
        Similar

        Media
```

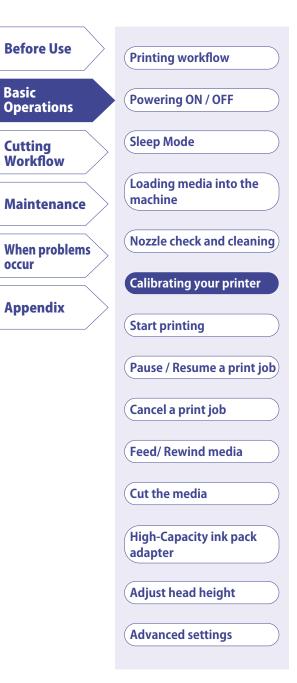


### The media feed adjustment is now completed.

• If print defects persist after automatic media feed adjustment, perform media feed adjustment manually by checking print results.

**"Run a media feed adjustment manually by checking print results" P.74** 

|                           |                    | o.: Remote Panel Mode :                  | Remore Panel Mode | Update |
|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|
| latus.                    | Adjustment has con | npleted.                                 | Annier Isko.      | Ent    |
| edia Feed Auto Adjustment |                    |                                          |                   |        |
| + 2 1                     | Follow the         | ese steps to Media Feed Auto Adjustment. |                   |        |
| Rack Corese               | Nest               |                                          |                   |        |
| 1 Lond media              | Detail             | Adjustments have been completed.         |                   | 1      |
| 7 2. Pattern printing     |                    | eggastressa trive teen tangeset.         |                   |        |
| y 3. Adjurtments          |                    |                                          |                   |        |
| 7 4.Ex                    |                    |                                          |                   |        |
|                           |                    |                                          |                   |        |
|                           |                    |                                          |                   |        |
|                           |                    |                                          |                   |        |
|                           |                    |                                          |                   |        |
|                           |                    |                                          |                   |        |
|                           |                    |                                          |                   |        |
|                           |                    |                                          |                   |        |
|                           |                    |                                          |                   |        |



# Run a media feed adjustment manually by checking print results

### 1. Initial Print



Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM" P.27

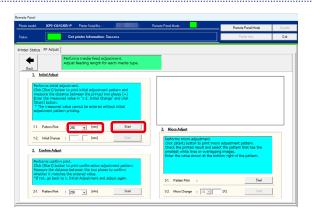


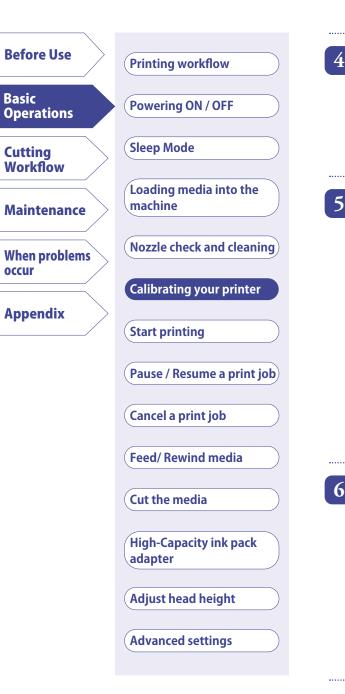
Go to the Media Setting tab > Adjust > PF Adjust and click [Start].

• The PF Adjust page opens.

- 3 Go to [1. Initial Adjust] > [1-1 Pattern Print], enter the media feed length (mm) and click [Start].
  - Enter the length that your ruler can measure. Increasing feed length will improve accuracy of media feed adjustment.
  - The machine prints a pattern.

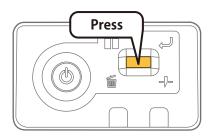






### Cut the media.

- Long press the operation key on the control panel for more than two seconds.
- The built-in sheet cutter will cut the media.



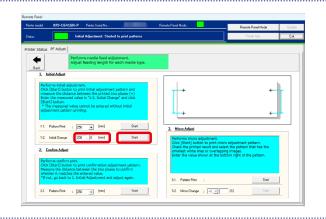
### Use a ruler to measure the distance between $\lceil + \rfloor$ marks printed.

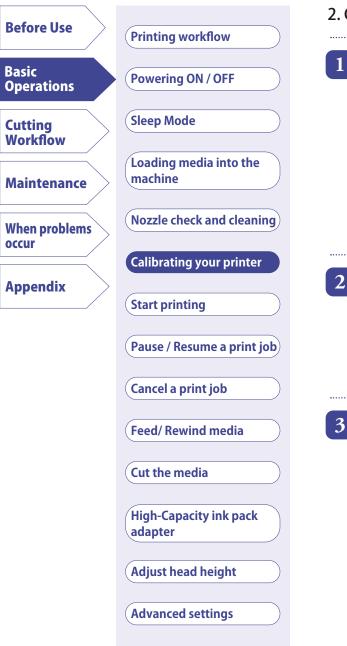
• In the illustration below, the distance you will measure is shown in the blue dotted lines and arrows (these lines and arrows will not be printed).



# Enter the measured length (mm) in 1-2. Initial Change and click [Set].

This will save the initial adjustment value.
Move to "2. Confirm Adjust" P.76.





# 2. Confirm Adjust

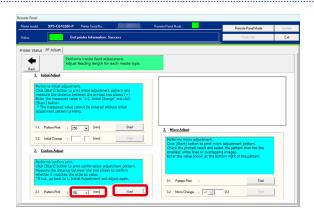


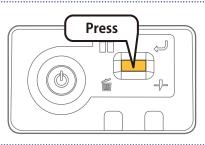
Go to [2. Confirm Adjust] > [2-1 Pattern Print], enter the media feed length (mm) and click [Start].

• The machine prints a pattern.

### Cut the media.

- Long press the operation key on the control panel for more than two seconds.
- The built-in sheet cutter will cut the media.



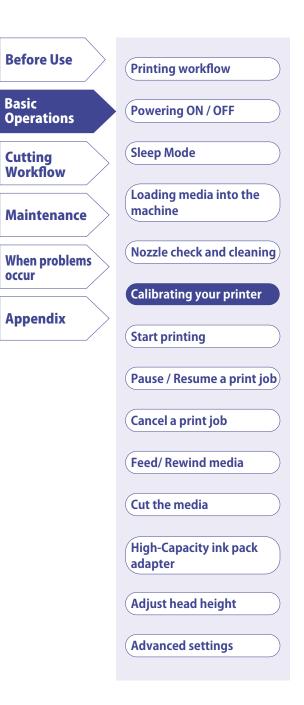


### 3

#### Use a ruler to measure the distance between $\lceil + \rfloor$ marks printed.

• In the illustration below, the distance you will measure is shown in the blue dotted lines and arrows (these lines and arrows will not be printed).





| 4 | Check the measured leng | gth. |
|---|-------------------------|------|
|   |                         |      |

# • If the length entered in Step 1 and the measured distance match: move to "3. Micro Adjust" P.77.

• If the length entered and the measured distance do not match: go back "1. Initial Print" P.74 and do the adjustment again.

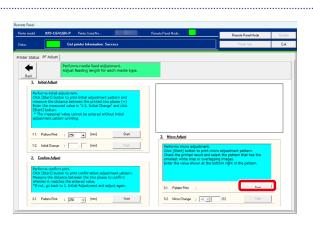
### 3. Micro Adjust



2

Go to [3. Micro Adjust] > [3-1 Pattern Print] and click [Start].

• The machine prints a pattern.



Look at the printed pattern and find the micro adjustment value.

- Find the pattern that has least white lines or overlapping.
- The value written under the selected pattern will be the micro adjustment value.







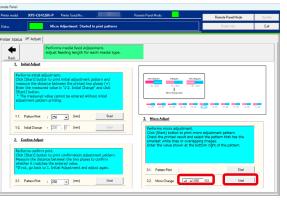
In [3-2. Micro Change], enter the micro adjustment value selected in Step 2 and click [Start].

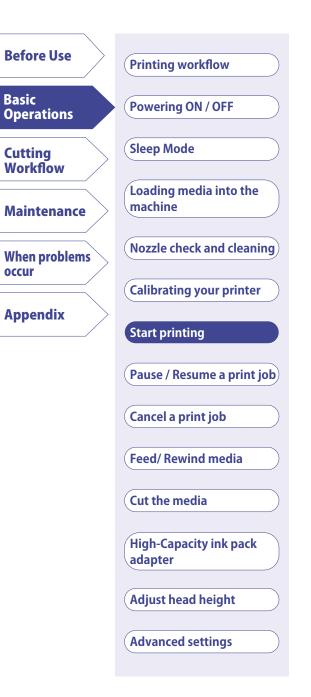
- This will save the micro adjustment value.
- The media feed adjustment is now completed.

# **Note**

Once the micro adjustment value has been saved, the value will become the reference value to be printed in the center of the pattern from the next print.

For example, if you have entered "-0.50" and print a micro adjustment pattern, values printed in the center of the pattern will be changed from 0.00 to -0.50. The value printed on the left side will be +0.70 and the value printed on the right side will be -1.70.





# **Start printing**

Here we will explain the basic printing procedure using VerteLith.

For the details of VerteLith setup, see the section "Configure initial setup of VerteLith and machine" on XPJ-C641SR-P Startup Guide.

# G Important #

2

Do not place any objects on the media feeding direction. If media feeding is interrupted, this will affect printing or cutting quality.

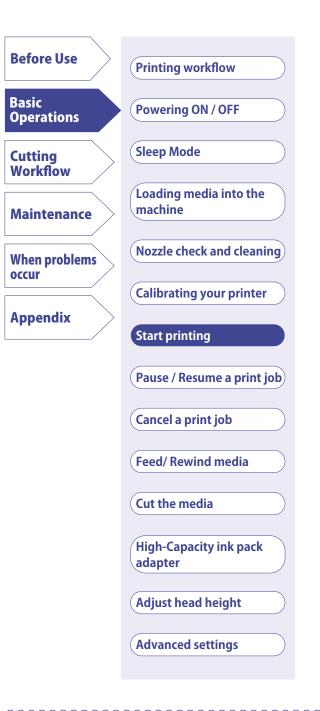
Before printing, do the following in order.

- Control Con
- INozzle check and cleaning" P.58
- **Calibrating your printer P.64 (if need)**

### Start VerteLith. Select "XPJ-C641SR-P" from the list of printer $(\widehat{1})$ .

• [XPJ-C641SR-P] will appear (2) .

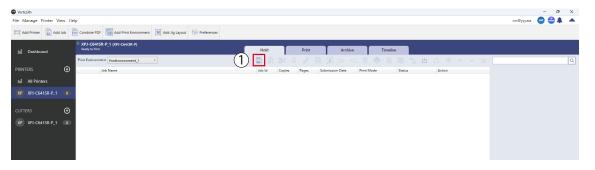




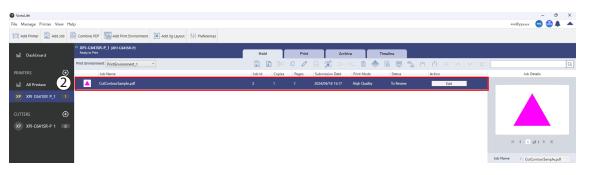
# 3 F

#### Add an image file you want to print.

• In the Hold queue, click the [Add Job] icon (①) so that the open dialog appears.

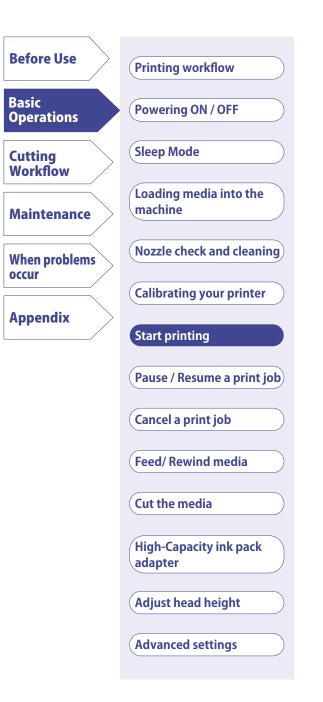


• Select an image file and click [OK] to add it to the Hold queue (2). You can add multiple files here.

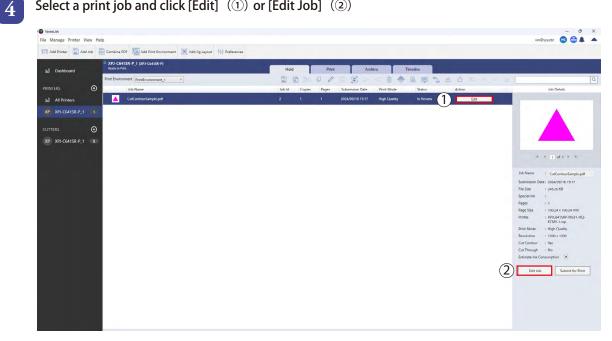




You can also drag and drop files in the Hold queue.



### Select a print job and click [Edit] (1) or [Edit Job] (2)





# 5 [Edit

[Edit Job Settings] appears. Click the General tab (1).

Select the output method (2).

• Print only

The machine only prints designs.

Print and cut

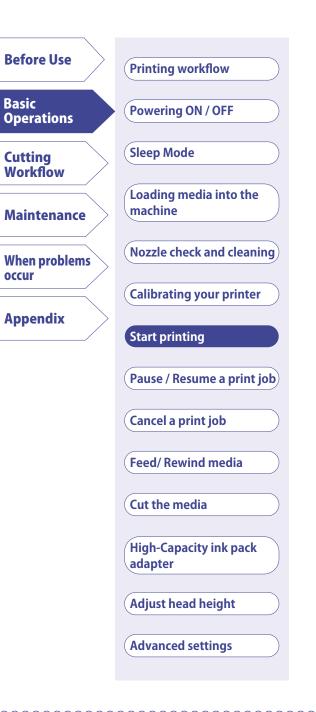
The machine prints and cut designs when a job contains a cutting data.

(See "Print & Cut" P.146

### • Cutting only

The machine only cuts designs when a job contains a cutting data.

| age Printer View                 | sent_1 > CutContourSample.pdf                  |         |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 | xxx@yyy.222 |         |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|---------|------------|-------------------|------------|--------------|----------|--------|----------|-----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|---------|
| HSR-P_1 (Ready to                | p Print)                                       |         | nk Control | Spot Colo         | Color Rep. | . Crop Marks | Grommets | Tiling | Trimming | Step & Re | Jig Layout | Print Notes     | Summary     | r.      |
|                                  |                                                |         | mm         |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| lu lu:<br>emo:                   | 2                                              |         | 600        | 550               | 500        | 450          | 400      | 350    | 300      | 250       | 200        | 150 100         | 50          |         |
|                                  |                                                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| le Name:<br>& Name:              | CutContourSample.pdf v<br>CutContourSample.pdf | -       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
|                                  |                                                | Eã      |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| ge Size:                         | 100.24 x 100.24 mm                             |         |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| jes:                             | 1                                              | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| e Size:                          | 245.20 KB                                      | E %     |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| solution:                        | 1200 x 1200                                    | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| Options                          |                                                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| I Optimize Media                 |                                                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| Intelligent Ne                   |                                                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| After Rip, Hold fr               |                                                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| Print from Botton Cutput to File | m                                              | - 8     |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            | -               |             |         |
| Cutput to File                   |                                                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 | A           |         |
| After Printing                   | Move to Hold                                   | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
| Operation                        | Print & Cut (2)                                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
|                                  | Cut continuously after printing                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
|                                  |                                                | E       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
|                                  |                                                | -       |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            | Lana cas        |             |         |
|                                  |                                                |         |            |                   |            |              |          |        |          |           |            |                 |             |         |
|                                  |                                                | V Color | White V    | /arnish 🗌 Show Cu | it Lines   |              |          |        |          |           |            | X: 385.08 Y: 22 | 2.28 C 1    | 00% × Q |





6

### Click the Printer Profile tab (1) .

Configure the basic print settings.

• Profile Group option (2)

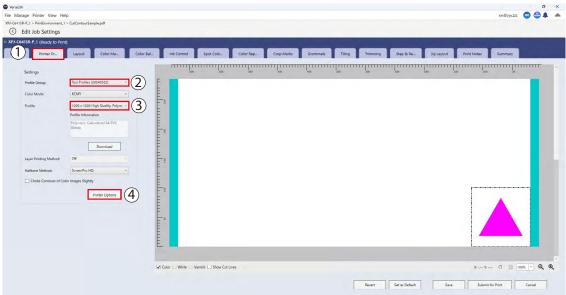
Select an appropriate profile group depending on the ink being used.

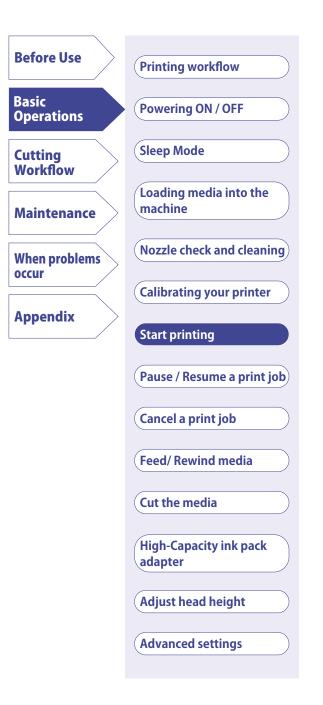
• Profile option (3)

Select an appropriate profile depending on the media type and print mode.

• Printer Options (④)

Additional advanced settings can be configured (you can also print with default settings).





7

Once you have set the print settings, click [Submit for Print] (①) so that the job will move to the Print queue. Printing begins after RIP processing.

| I lathore Method. Societifie HQ - Choke Contours of Color Images SigNey Printer Options |                                    |                            |                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                                                                         | Color White Varnish Show Cut Lines |                            | X: Y: O 💠 100% *        |
|                                                                                         |                                    | Revert Set as Default Save | Submit for Print Cancel |

• The processing status of the job (Sending, Waiting for ripping, Ripping, Waiting for Print) can be viewed (2).

| 😨 VerteLith                                                                |            |            |                  |              |          |                 | - 0 ×               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------|------------------|--------------|----------|-----------------|---------------------|
| File Manage Printer View Help                                              |            |            |                  |              |          |                 | xxx@yyy.222 🚾 😂 🌲 🔺 |
| T Add Printer Add Job E Combine PDF Add Print Environment H Add Jiq Layout |            |            |                  |              |          |                 |                     |
| Dashboard     CXPJ-C641SR-P_1 (XPJ-C641SR-P)     Revey to Print            | Hold       | Print      | t Arc            | thive        | Timeline |                 |                     |
| 2                                                                          |            |            | -                |              |          | (1)             |                     |
| PRINTERS 🕑 Job Name                                                        | Job Id Cop | oies Pages | Submission Date  | Print Mode   | Status   | Progress Cancel | Preview             |
| Ial All Printers CutContourSample.pdf                                      | 2 I        | 1          | 2024/09/18 15:17 | High Quality | Ripping  |                 |                     |
| XP XPI-C641SR-P_1 1                                                        |            |            |                  |              |          |                 |                     |
| CUTTERS 🕝                                                                  |            |            |                  |              |          |                 |                     |
| XP XPI-C641SR-P_1 0                                                        |            |            |                  |              |          |                 |                     |
|                                                                            |            |            |                  |              |          |                 |                     |
|                                                                            |            |            |                  |              |          |                 |                     |
|                                                                            |            |            |                  |              |          |                 |                     |

- The job will automatically move to the Hold queue after printing  $(\Im)$  .

| VerteLith                   |                                                                    |                 |                                 |               | - 0 ×               |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| ile Manage Printer View Hel | P                                                                  |                 |                                 |               | xxx@yyy.zzz 🛛 🚭 🌲 🔺 |
| Add Printer 🔛 Add Job       | Combine PDF 🔛 Add Print Environment 🗮 Add Jig Layout 👫 Preferences |                 |                                 |               |                     |
| a) Dashboard                | XPJ-C641SR-P_1 (XPJ-C641SR-P) Ready to Print                       | Hold            | Print Archive                   | Timeline      |                     |
|                             | Print Environment PrintEnvironment_1                               | 🗈 🖪 🔀 O         |                                 |               | C                   |
| PRINTERS 🕚                  | Job Name                                                           | Job Id Copies I | ages Submission Date Print Mode | Status Action |                     |
| all Printers 3              | CutContourSample.pdf                                               | 2 1 1           | 2024/09/18 15:17 High Quality   | Cut Edit      |                     |
| CUTTERS                     |                                                                    |                 |                                 |               |                     |
| XP XPJ-CG41SR-P_1 0         |                                                                    |                 |                                 |               |                     |
|                             |                                                                    |                 |                                 |               |                     |
|                             |                                                                    |                 |                                 |               |                     |
|                             |                                                                    |                 |                                 |               |                     |
|                             |                                                                    |                 |                                 |               |                     |



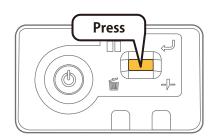
# Pause / Resume a print job

Short press the operation key on the control panel while printing.

- The printing will be paused.
- Pressing the operation key again will resume the print job.

### 🛄 Note

- This operation does not delete the print job sent to the machine.
- To cancel printing and delete the job, see the following section.
- Trancel a print job" P.86





# Cancel a print job

# Cancel printing from the machine

Press the operation key on the control panel for more than two seconds.

- Printing is canceled (it cannot be resumed).
- The print job sent to the machine is deleted.

# Press

# Cancel printing from the computer



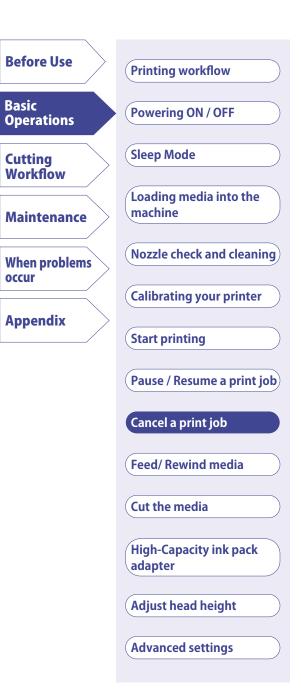
Start MSM while printing and open the remote panel. "Launching/ Opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



In the Printer Control menu, click [Print Cancel].

A confirmation message appears.



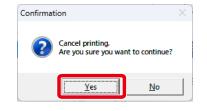


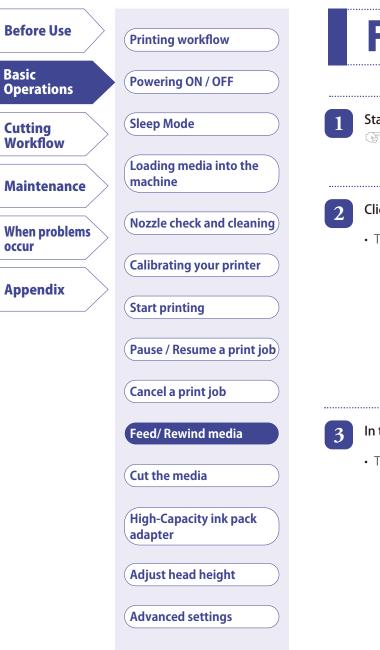


Click [Yes].

• This will cancel printing.

3



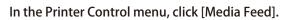


# Feed/ Rewind media

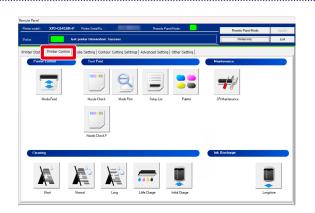
Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM" P.27

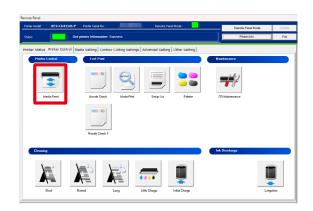
### Click the Printer Control tab.

• The Printer Control tab page opens.



• The Media Feed page appears.

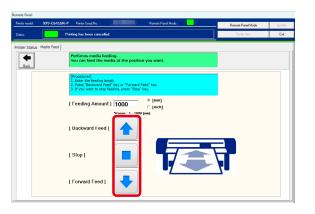


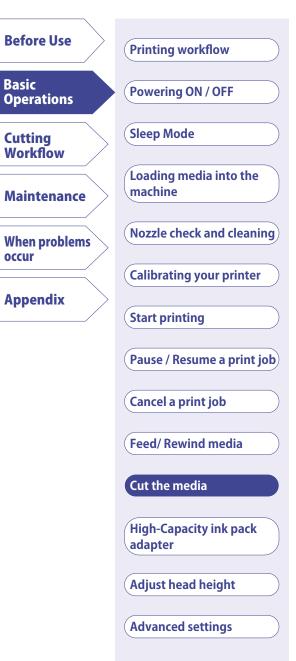




# Clicking [Backward Feed] or [Forward Feed] will feed the media backward or forward.

- Clicking [Stop] during this operation will stop the media feeding.
- You can also press the operation key on the control panel to stop the media feeding.





# Cut the media

This section explains how to cut the sheet off the roll media. For contour cutting (cutting out around the design), see "Advanced Operation" in this document.

# Cut from the control panel

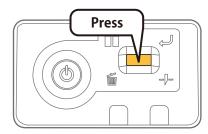


Check that printing has finished.



Long press the operation key on the control panel.

• The built-in sheet cutter will cut the media.





# Cut from the computer





Start MSM and open the remote panel. The second secon



#### Click the Printer Status tab and click [Media Cut] in the Printer Control menu.

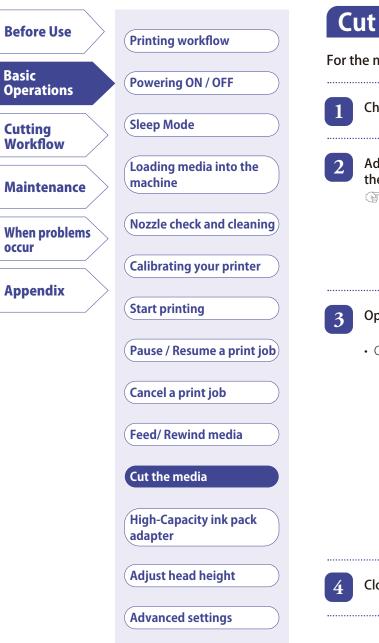
• The confirmation message appears.





The built-in sheet cutter will cut the media.

| Confirmat | ion                                    |              | $\times$ |
|-----------|----------------------------------------|--------------|----------|
| ?         | Media cuting.<br>Are you sure you want | to continue? |          |
|           | <u>Y</u> es                            | <u>N</u> o   |          |

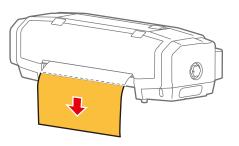


# **Cut manually**

For the media that the built-in sheet cutter is unable to cut, follow these steps to cut it manually.

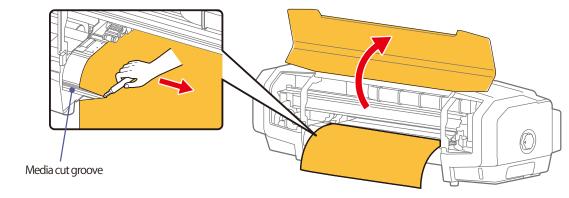
Check that printing has finished.

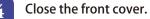
Advance the media to the position where you can cut the printed result.



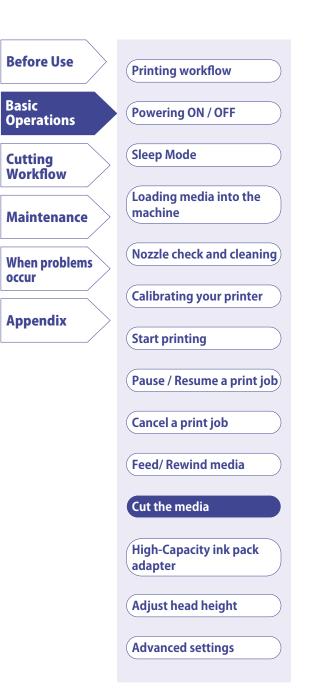
Open the front cover and cut the media using your personal cutter.

• Cut it along the media cut groove.



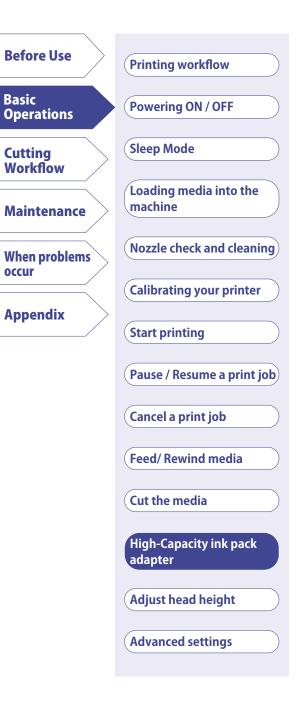


XPJ-C641SR-P Operations and Maintenance Methods



# **Cut automatically**

This product has the function to automatically cut the media each time after printing. **Set up auto cutting** P.97



# **High-Capacity ink pack adapter**

For how to attach a 1000ml ink bag to the high-capacity ink pack adapter, see the high-capacity ink pack adapter operation manual.

# When using the high-capacity ink pack adapter for the first time

In the following cases, air in the high-capacity ink pack adapter may enter the ink lines in the machine, causing nozzle clogging.

- When you install the high-capacity ink pack adapter on the machine already filled with ink.
- When the high-capacity ink pack adapter was already used on the machine and you replace with a new highcapacity ink pack adapter to install.

To avoid this, make sure to perform an initial ink charging from the remote panel on MSM. For initial ink charging procedure, see the following section.

Performing initial ink charging" P.221

# **Replace the adapter's plug**

The plug of the high-capacity ink pack adapter needs to be replaced when the high-capacity ink pack adapter has been removed/installed for a certain number of times.

For the detailed procedure, see the following section.

**The set of the adapter's plug for high-capacity ink pack adapter P.205** 



# **Adjust head height**

# About head height

Normally set the head height to "Low". Avoid using the machine with High setting unless a head strike occurs with Low setting. The closer the gap between the media and the printhead, the better the consistency of the print quality.

### G Important!!

Depending on the condition of a roll media or media cockling caused by the printer settings, you may get a head strike causing ink smears on the media. In such cases, try followings:

Reduce the heater temperature setting

**\*\*** "Specify the heater setting" P.102

• After you change the head height, make sure to perform the print quality calibration.

Trint quality calibration ("Adjust Print")" P.64

• Do not open the front cover and change the head height during printing. Print quality cannot be guaranteed.

See the following table for the relationship between the head height and the recommended media thickness. Avoid using higher head height unless absolutely necessary, as the wider head gap will cause ink mist to adhere to the printhead nozzles, media or inside of the printer, adversely affecting print quality or leading to damage to the printer parts.

| Head height | Recommended media thickness | Maximum media<br>thickness that printer<br>can feed | Description                    |
|-------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Low         | $\sim$ 0.3 mm               | 0.4 mm                                              | Normally use this head height. |

(Maximum thickness that media can pass through the media path: 0.8 mm)

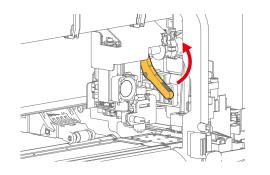


# Changing the head height

1 Open the front cover.



Raise the head height adjustment lever and change the print head height.



# 3

4

Close the front cover.

Perform print quality calibration.
Perform quality calibration ("Adjust Print")" P.64

### G Important!!

Do not change the print head height while printing.



# **Advanced settings**

You can change the printer settings according to your usage.

Here we introduce some of the functions. For more information on how to use MSM, see the MSM operation manual.

# Set up auto cutting

You can configure the setting to automatically cut the media once printing is complete. Specify this setting appropriately depending on the width, thickness or material of media.

### 🛄 Note

This option may not cut off some types of media. In such cases, cut it manually.

# Procedure



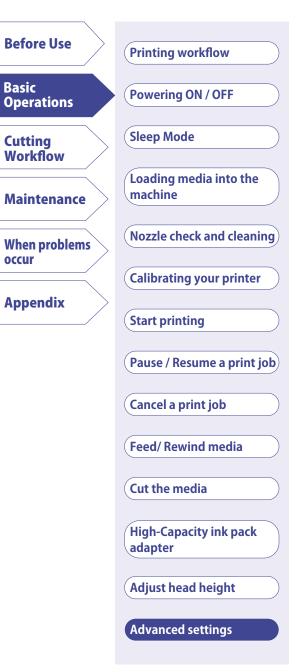
Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



2

Go to the [Media Setting] tab > [Media Initial] menu and select other than "Off".

|                  | PJ-C6415R-P  |                | iceial No. :                   |                  |            | note Panel Mode :                       |               | Remote Panel       | Mode    | Upd  |
|------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------------------|------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------|------|
| rt []            |              | iet printer li | nformation: Suc                | cess             |            |                                         |               | Printer Inf        | lo.     | Ð    |
| ter Status   Pri | nter Control | ledia Settir   | 19 Contour Cu                  | tting Settings / | Vdvanced 9 | Setting Other Setting                   | Plug Lifetime |                    |         |      |
| Media Type       |              |                |                                |                  |            |                                         |               |                    |         |      |
| Moula 1300       |              |                |                                |                  |            |                                         |               |                    |         |      |
| Media Type       | : Type1(     | [ype1]         | <ul> <li>Initializa</li> </ul> | ston :           | Start      |                                         |               |                    |         |      |
| Hedia Setting    | 3            |                |                                |                  |            | Adjust                                  |               |                    |         |      |
| Print Mode       | : High Dua   | ly 💌           | Effect                         | : SceenFin       | e. 💌       | Adjust Print :                          | Start         | Adjust Print(Auto) | : Start |      |
| Vacuum Fan       | : 0#         |                | Heater                         | : 🗹 30           | [0]        | PF Adjust :                             | Start         | PF Adjuet(Auto)    | : Start |      |
| Side Margin      | 25           | (mm)           | Media Initial                  | Width            |            |                                         |               |                    |         |      |
|                  |              |                |                                |                  | _          | Adjust Contour Cutt                     |               | -1                 |         |      |
|                  |              |                |                                |                  |            | Print                                   | Start         |                    |         |      |
| Origin           | : 0#         | ٣              |                                |                  |            | Setup(PF)                               | • • 0.0 im    | Selup(CR)          | • •0.   | j (m |
| Nedia Inform     | notion       |                |                                |                  |            | Adjust Cut Scale                        |               |                    |         |      |
| Width            | : 407        | (mm)           | Thickness                      | 170              | (um)       | 1. Initial Adjust<br>1-1. Pattern Print | : 500         | • (mm)             | Start   |      |
| Media Type C     | 009          |                |                                |                  |            | 1-2. Initial Change                     | . 0           | . 0 (mm)           | Stat    |      |
| Copy from        |              | Copy to        |                                |                  |            | 2. Confirm Adjust<br>2-1. Pattern Print |               | • (mm)             | Stat    |      |





method.

Go to the [Advanced Setting] tab > [Output Mode] menu and select [Auto Cut].

From the [Method of Cut] menu, select the cutting

| Date Mode         Direct         Direct         Ann Dearing           Algorithment         F         Direct         Valving           Page Scip         Filtured         Start Faced         :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | -       | _          |            |                  |             |        |                |         |         | - 1 | Remote Panel Mode          | Updat |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|------------|------------|------------------|-------------|--------|----------------|---------|---------|-----|----------------------------|-------|
| Advanced Entropy Advanced Advance  |               |         | Pri        | nting has  | been cancelled.  |             |        |                |         |         |     | Printer Info.              | Exit  |
| Advanced Entropy Advanced Advance  | tor Status ]  | Orintor | Controlle  | India Ent  | ing   Contour C  |             | www.   | Setting attack | ottioo  | 1       |     |                            |       |
| Head Turol : T |               |         |            | icolo occi | ang   contoor ci | tony octany |        | dia d          | ceering |         |     |                            |       |
| Spring         I         Desc Court         I         Desc         Spring         Desc         Match All         Ma                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Multi Strike  | -       | 1          | (cnt)      | Pass Wait        | : 0 ,0      | (sec)  | Slant Check :  | On      |         | ٠   | Prev. Stick : Off          | ٠     |
| Helhold VGA         Spage Gal 3 and<br>Digit Mode         Cut Person         Figs =<br>Digit         Provide<br>All Dearts         Digit         Nutlet<br>State         Nut                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Head Travel   |         | Media      | ٠          | Header Dump      | 0#          | •      |                |         |         |     | Sheet-off lead :           | inni  |
| Matheway     International     International     International     International     International     International       Matheway     International     International     International     International     International       Page Gas     International     International     International     International     International       Page Gas     International     International     International     International     International       StandayHead     International     International     International     International     International                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Spitting      |         | On         | ۲          | Pass Count       | : 2         | [cr#]  | Select Nozzle  |         |         |     |                            |       |
| Classification         Director                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Method of Cut | -       | Single Cut | • 3 sb 💌   | Cut Pressure     | High        | •      | Print          |         | Start   |     | Nozzle Settings : Nozzle / | α. 👱  |
| Togologo program i sun rood i program  | Dutput Mode   |         | 0#         | ×          | InkDay Timer     | 0           | [sec]  |                |         |         |     |                            |       |
| Standby Heat : 60(min)  Fan Mode : Standard  Cleaning Mode : UII  Cleaning Interval : 110 Imin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Page Gap      |         | Normal     | v          | Start Food       | • • 0       | 0 (mm) |                | :       | Rushing | ٠   | Cleaning Interval : 100    | (min) |
| Before Print : Ott                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Standby Heat  |         | 60(min)    | ۳          | Fan Mode         | Standard    | ٠      |                | ;       | OH      | ٠   | Cleaning Interval : 180    | (min) |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |               |         |            |            |                  |             |        | Before Print   |         | 0#      | ۳   |                            |       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |               |         |            |            |                  |             |        |                |         |         |     |                            |       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |               |         |            |            |                  |             |        |                |         |         |     |                            |       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |               |         |            |            |                  |             |        |                |         |         |     |                            |       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |               |         |            |            |                  |             |        |                |         |         |     |                            |       |

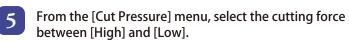
| nter Statul   Proter Control   Media Setting   Control Cutting Setting   Control   Media Setting   Control Cutting Setting   Cutting Seting   Cutting   Cutting |               |          |             |                   |                         |                   |              | Remote Panel Mode           | Up |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|-------------|-------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|----|
| Advanced Featring         Part Val         IP         Dent         Start Check         On         Part Stak         IOI         IOI           Head Dury         I         IP         <                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | alus:         |          | vinting has | been cancelled.   |                         |                   |              | Printer Info.               | (  |
| Hald Steine     :     Implicit Pain Valit     Implicit Pai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |               |          | Media Set   | ting   Contour Ci | utting Settings Advance | d Setting Other S | etting       |                             |    |
| Head         Fail         Fail <th< td=""><td>Advanced</td><td>Setting</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></th<>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Advanced      | Setting  |             |                   |                         |                   |              |                             |    |
| Spring         : On         Para Cool         : Para                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Multi Strike  | : 1      | [cnt]       | Pass Wait         | : 0 ,0 [sec]            | Slant Check       | 0n 💌         | Prev. Stick : Off           | •  |
| Northol GO         Standbart Lab         Standbart L                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Head Travel   | Media    | v           | Header Dump       | 011                     |                   |              | Sheet-off lead              | jm |
| Android GL         Spring Cat June         Cut Preview         High         Preview         Preview <td>Spitting</td> <td>On</td> <td>×</td> <td>Pass Count</td> <td>: [2 [cr/]</td> <td>Calact North</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Spitting      | On       | ×           | Pass Count        | : [2 [cr/]              | Calact North      |              |                             |    |
| Natural tools         (D)         Initial tools         (D)         Utility         Valing         Valing         Charring tools         Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Method of Cut | Single C | ut - 3 sb 💌 | Cut Pressure      | High 💌                  |                   | : Start      | Nozzle Settings : Nozzle AL |    |
| Pogo Sop : Rumar in Starf Food :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Dutput Mode   | : 0#     | ۲           | InkDry Timer      | 0 [sec]                 |                   |              |                             |    |
| Standay Heat : 60(min) V Fan Mode · Standard V Cleaning Mode : Ust V Cleaning Interval : [10] 0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Page Gap      | : Normal | v           | Start Food        | • • 0 . 0 (mm)          | Cleaning Mode     | : Flushing 💌 | Cleaning Interval : 100     | (n |
| Before Print : DII                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Standby Heat  | 60(min)  | ×           | Fan Mode          | Standard                |                   | : 0#         | Cleaning Interval : 180     | In |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |          |             |                   |                         | Before Print      | 011          |                             |    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |          |             |                   |                         |                   |              |                             |    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |          |             |                   |                         |                   |              |                             |    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |          |             |                   |                         |                   |              |                             |    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |          |             |                   |                         |                   |              |                             |    |

The cutting method has the following modes:

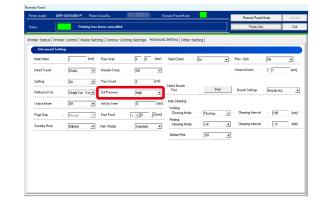
- Single Cut 2 steps : Cut with less process than "Single Cut 3 steps." This option is suitable for narrow-width media.
- Single Cut 3 steps : Normal cutting method.
- Double Cut 2 steps : Select this when "Single Cut 2 steps" cannot fully cut the media. This option is suitable for narrow-width media.

Double Cut - 3 steps : Select this when "Single Cut - 3 steps" cannot fully cut the media.





• Use [Low] for thin media.

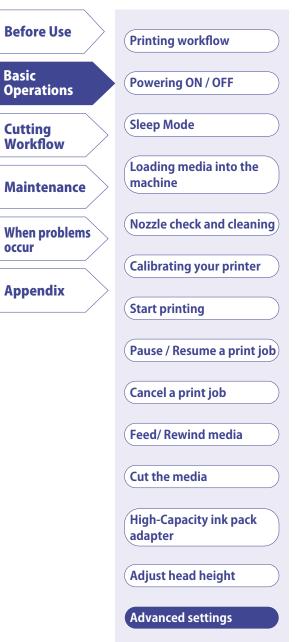




#### Click [Update].

• This will save the change in the machine.

| ter model :     | Aron   | :641SR-P    | rine       | Serial No. :     |                       | Remote Panel Node :      |         | _     | Remote Panel Hode    | Update      |
|-----------------|--------|-------------|------------|------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------|-------|----------------------|-------------|
| us:             |        | Pr          | inting has | been cancelled.  |                       |                          |         |       | Panter Into.         | Ext         |
| ter Status   Pr | inter  | Control   1 | redia Seti | ing   Contour Cu | itting Settings Advan | oed Setting Other S      | etting  |       |                      |             |
| Advanced S      | otting |             |            |                  |                       |                          |         |       |                      |             |
| Multi Strike    |        | 1           | [cnt]      | Pass Wait        | : 0 ,0 (rec           | ] Slant Check :          | 0n      | *     | Prev. Stick : 08     | ×           |
| Head Travel     |        | Media       | v          | Header Dump      | Off                   | •                        |         |       | Sheet-off feed :     | [mm]        |
| Spitting        |        | 0n          | •          | Pass Count       | : 2 [ont              | - Select Nozzle          |         |       |                      |             |
| Method of Cut   |        | Single Cu   | t - 3 ob 💌 | Out Pressure     | High                  | - Print                  | ÷       | Start | Nozzle Settings : No | ozzle ALL 💽 |
| Output Mode     |        | 01          | •          | InkDay Timer     | : 0 (e                | Auto Cloaning<br>Waiting |         |       |                      |             |
| Page Gap        |        | Normal      | v          | Start Feed       | : • • 0 , 0 Inc       |                          | Dushing | ۷     | Cleaning Interval :  | 180 [min]   |
| Standby Heat    |        | 60[min]     | *          | Fan Mode         | Standard              | Classics Made            | : 0#    | ٠     | Cleaning Interval :  | 180 (min)   |
|                 |        |             |            |                  |                       | Before Print             | : Off   | ×     |                      |             |
|                 |        |             |            |                  |                       |                          |         |       |                      |             |
|                 |        |             |            |                  |                       |                          |         |       |                      |             |
|                 |        |             |            |                  |                       |                          |         |       |                      |             |
|                 |        |             |            |                  |                       |                          |         |       |                      |             |



# Set up vacuum fan

When printing on thin or soft media, wrinkles or media jam can be prevented by turning down the vacuum fan.

# Procedure



Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



3

#### Click the [Media Setting] tab.

• The [Media Setting] tab page appears.

Select the type of media from the [Media Type] menu.

| hinter model: XPJ-C641SR-P Printer Sei         | Remote Panel Mode                    | Updet                                          |                      |            |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------|------------|
| Stater Get printer Ind                         | Printer Info.                        | Exit                                           |                      |            |
| rinter Status   Printer Contre   Media Setting | ontour Cutting Settings   Advanced ! | Setting Other Setting Plug Lifetime            |                      |            |
| Media Type                                     |                                      |                                                |                      |            |
|                                                | Initialization : Start               |                                                |                      |            |
| Media Ivae : Type1(Type1) 💌                    | Initialization : Star                |                                                |                      |            |
| Hedia Setting                                  |                                      | Adjust                                         |                      |            |
| Print Mode : High Quality 💌                    | Effect : ScatenFinel.                | Adjust Print : Start                           | Adjust Print(Auto) : | Start      |
| Vacuum Fan : Off 💌                             | Heater : 💌 🔽 [1]                     | PF Adjust : Start                              | PF Adjust(Auto) :    | Start      |
| Side Margin : [25 [mm]                         | Media Initial : Width 💌              |                                                |                      |            |
|                                                |                                      | Adjust Contour Cutting Position                | 1                    |            |
|                                                |                                      |                                                |                      |            |
| Origin : Off 💌                                 |                                      | Setup(PF) + • 0 .0 [mm]                        | Selup(CR) + 💌        | [0 .0 jmm] |
| Hedia Information                              |                                      | Adjust Cut Scole<br>1. Initial Adjust          |                      |            |
| Width : [407 [mm]                              | Thickness : 170 (un)                 | 1-1. Pattern Print : 500                       | • [mm] Stat          |            |
| Media Type Copy                                |                                      | 1-2. Initial Change : 0                        | . 0 (mm) Stat        |            |
| Copy from Copy to                              |                                      | 2. Confirm Adjust<br>2-1. Pattern Print : Topp | • [mm] Stat          |            |

 Namede Parel
 States Handlake
 States
 Reads Read Made
 States

 States
 Name Parel Mode
 Name Parel Mode
 Name
 Name



4 From • Op

### From the [Vacuum fan] menu, select the mode.

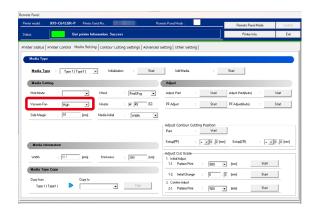
Option: Off/ Low/ Medium/ <u>High</u>
 \*The underlined option is the default setting.

### 🛄 Note

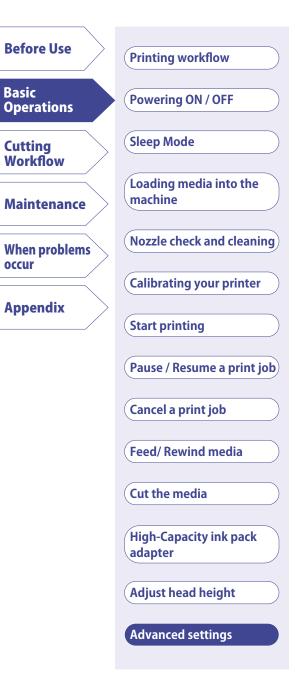
While printing, the setting specified in the print data has priority.

# 5 Click [Update].

• This will save the change in the machine.



| er model: XPJ+C641SR+P Phriter Senal No. :                                    | Remote Panel Mode : Upd                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| #: Get printer Information: Success                                           | Printer Info. Ex                                           |
| er Status   Printer Control   Media Setting   Contour Cutting Settings   Advi | anced Setting Other Setting                                |
| Hedia Tipe                                                                    |                                                            |
| seema system                                                                  |                                                            |
| Missika Tuses : Type I (Type I) V Initialization : S                          | tat                                                        |
| Modia Setting                                                                 | Adjust                                                     |
| Print Mode : High Speed 💌 Elfect : i-ScreenFinel.                             | Adjust Print : Start Adjust Print/Autol : Start            |
| Veccom Fan : Low 💌 Heater : 💌 30 🛛                                            | C] PFAdaut : Stat PFAdaut[Auto] : Stat                     |
| Side Margin : 15 (mm) Media Initial : Width                                   | •                                                          |
|                                                                               | Adjust Contour Cutting Position                            |
|                                                                               | Pint : Stat                                                |
| Media Information                                                             | Setup(PF) : • • 0 .0 (mm) Setup(TR) : • • 0 .0 (mm)        |
| Width : [611 [mm] Thickness : 170 [6                                          | -Adjust Cut Scale                                          |
| Media Type Copy                                                               | 1-1. Pattern Print : 500 • (mm) Stat                       |
|                                                                               | 1-2. Initial Change : 0 . 0 (mm) Start                     |
| Copy from Copy to Type 1 (Type 1)                                             | 2. Continn Adjust<br>2-1. Patient Print : 500 v femal Stat |



# Specify the heater setting

Heater is used to heat media before or after printing in order to improve print quality or accelerate ink drying. Better results can be obtained by changing the heater settings depending on the thickness or material of media.

### G Important #

For cutting, set the heater to [Off]. If the printed media is still hot, it will affect cutting quality.

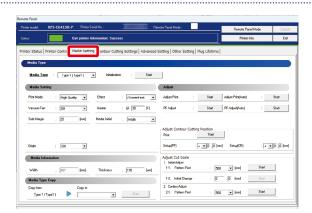
# Procedure

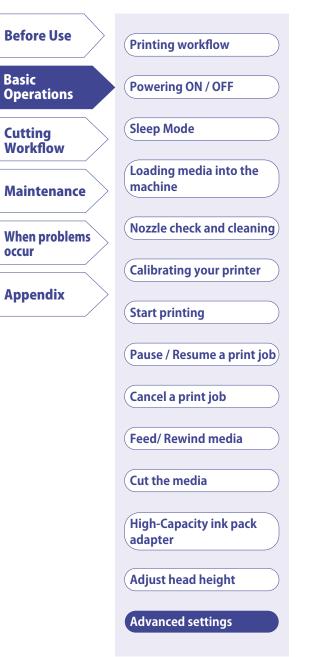


Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM" P.27

2 Clie

- Click the [Media Setting] tab.
- The [Media Setting] tab page appears.







4

5

temperature.

Click [Update].

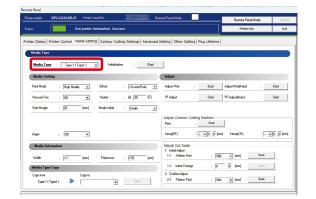
• Setting range: Off / <u>30</u> - 45℃

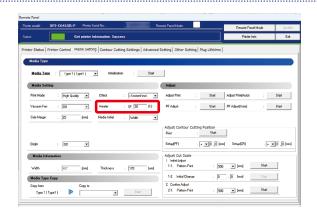
Select the type of media from the [Media Type] menu.

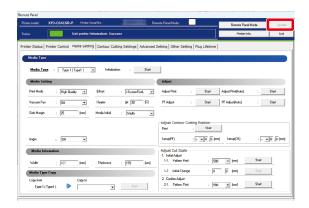
From the [Heater] menu, specify the heater

\*The underlined option is the default setting.

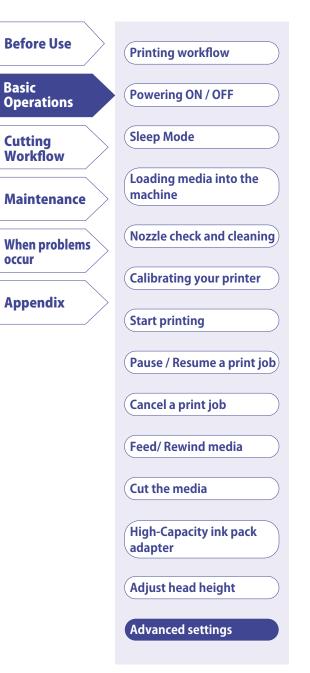
• This will save the change in the machine.







XPJ-C641SR-P Operations and Maintenance Methods



# **Cooling down setting**

This menu allows you to cool down the machine for a certain period before cutting to avoid impact of heat on cutting.

# Procedure



Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel" P.28

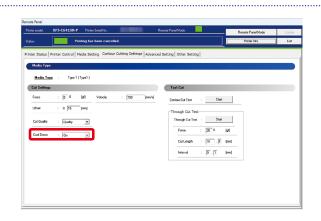
2 Click the [Contour Cutting Settings] tab.

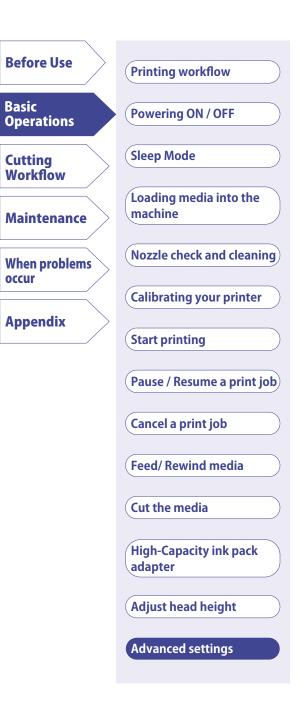
 Neurode fandel
 Neurole Fandel fandel fandel fandel fandel fandel
 Neurole Fandel fandel fandel fandel fandel fandel fa

3

### In the [Cool Down] menu, select [ON].

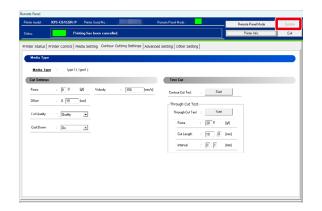
- Option: OFF/<u>ON</u>
   \*The underline shows the default setting.
- On : After printing, the machine waits for the platen temperature to drop below 35 degrees C before reading crop marks and cutting. If the platen temperature does not drop below 35 degrees C after 10 minutes, the machine will stop cooling down and start the next operation.
- Off : After printing, the machine begins reading crop marks or cutting without any waiting time.







• This will save the change in the machine.





# Specify the ink drying time

Specify the ink drying time before cutting.

# Procedure



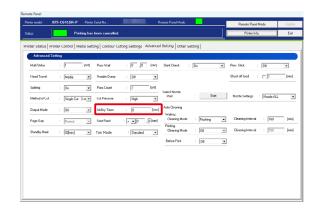
3

Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



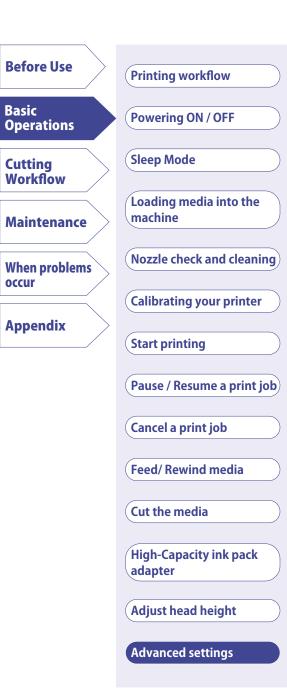
Click the [Advanced Setting] tab.

| Print            | ing has been i                                                     | tancelled                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Printer Info                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Exi                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ter Control   Me | dia Setting   C                                                    | ontour Cutting Sel                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | tting: Advan                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | ued Setting )ther Se        | etting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| lling            |                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | _                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| : 1              | (cr/) Pass                                                         | Wait : 0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | .0 (000                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Slant Check :               | On                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | ×                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Prev. Stick : Oli                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | ×                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Media            | • Hose                                                             | for Dump : 0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | ur <u>-</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | •                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Sheet-alt lead :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | (mm)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| : 0n             | ✓ Pass                                                             | Count : 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | [cnl]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Single Cut       | 3 sh 💌 Cut P                                                       | Vessure : H                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | igh -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | - Evint                     | : Star                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Nozzle Settings : Nozzle                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | ALL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| : 0#             | • InkD                                                             | ryTimer : [C                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | ) [se                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| : Normal         | - Start                                                            | Feed :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | • 0 . 0 (mi                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Cleaning Mode               | Dushing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | ٠                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Cleaning Interval : 16                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | i) (min                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| CO(min)          | 💌 Fan                                                              | Mode : S                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Randard .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | T Closeins Mode             | : 0#                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | *                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Cleaning Interval : 15                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | i) (nin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                  |                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Before Print                | Off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | •                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                  |                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                  |                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                  |                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                  | ting<br>: 1<br>: Meda<br>: On<br>: Single Cut<br>: Off<br>: Normal | Itrag         Pass           :         [         [         Pass         ]           :         [         [         Pass         ]         Hood         ]           :         [         [         [         Pass         ]         Pass         ]         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [         [ | Integ         Pass Vola         (0)           :         [Mada         Hoodo Duep         (2)           :         [Mada         Hoodo Duep         (2)           :         [Mada         Hoodo Duep         (2)           :         [Mada         Pass Court         (2)           :         [Mada         Query         (2)           :         [Mada         Query         (2)           :         [Mada         Query         (2)           :         [Mada         Query         (2)           :         [Mada         [Mada         (2)           :         [Mada         [Mada         [Mada | initial         :         0 | Imp         Pair Val         IP         Pair Val         Pair Val </td <td>Integr         Para Val         : [0]. [0]         Baar Check         Om           : [Mode         Mode Durge         : [0].         Mode Durge         : [0].           : [Singl Cur 3 and UnPersonan         : [Adda         Mathematical State Theory         : State Theory           : [Singl Cur 3 and UnPersonan         : [B].         Mathematical State Theory         : State Theory         : State Theory           : [Singl Cur 3 and UnPersonan         : [Singl Cur 3 and UPerson State State StateStresta</td> <td>Inter         Para Val         (β, β)         (end)         Start Dock         (gn, -)           1         Mode Dorge         (Git         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         <td< td=""><td>Integr         Para Vula         (P         (P)         (P)</td></td<></td> | Integr         Para Val         : [0]. [0]         Baar Check         Om           : [Mode         Mode Durge         : [0].         Mode Durge         : [0].           : [Singl Cur 3 and UnPersonan         : [Adda         Mathematical State Theory         : State Theory           : [Singl Cur 3 and UnPersonan         : [B].         Mathematical State Theory         : State Theory         : State Theory           : [Singl Cur 3 and UnPersonan         : [Singl Cur 3 and UPerson State State StateStresta | Inter         Para Val         (β, β)         (end)         Start Dock         (gn, -)           1         Mode Dorge         (Git         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         -         - <td< td=""><td>Integr         Para Vula         (P         (P)         (P)</td></td<> | Integr         Para Vula         (P         (P)         (P) |



# In the [Ink Dry Timer] menu, enter the drying time in second.

• Setting range: <u>0</u> to 3600 seconds (60 minutes) \*The underline shows the default setting.





### Click [Update].

• This will save the change in the machine.

|                  | _         |           |          |                  |                    | Update                         |        |          |                 |            |       |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|----------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|--------|----------|-----------------|------------|-------|
| 8.45             |           | Prin      | ting has | been cancelled.  |                    |                                |        |          | Pinte I         | nfo. j     | Exit  |
| nter Status   Pr | inter Con | trol M    | dia Sett | ing   Contour Cu | tting Settings Adv | noed Setting or                | her Se | tting    |                 |            |       |
| Advanced S       | etting    |           |          |                  |                    |                                |        |          |                 |            |       |
| Multi Strike     | : 1       |           | [cni]    | Parr Wait        | : 0,01             | on:] Slant Check               | :      | 0n •     | Prev. Stick.    | : Off      | *     |
| Head Travel      | : м       | edia      | ٠        | Header Dump      | : 01               | •                              |        |          | Sheet off feed  | : [0       | [mm]  |
| Spitting         | : 0       | n         | ۲        | Pass Count       | : 2 0              | nt]<br>Select Nozzle           |        |          |                 |            |       |
| Method of Cut    | : \$      | nglo Cuit | 3 00 💌   | Cut Pressure     | High               | • Print                        |        | Start    | Nozzle Seitings | Nozzle ALL | •     |
| Output Mode      | : 0       | 1         | ٠        | InkDry Timer     | : 0                | [see] Auto Cleanin<br>— Waling | 9      |          |                 |            |       |
| Page Gap         | : N       | omal      | v        | Stat Feed        |                    | Painting                       |        | Flushing |                 | 1          | (min) |
| Standby Heat     | : 6       | (min)     | ٠        | Fan Mode         | : Standard         | Cleaning I                     |        | : 011 .  | Cleaning Interv | al : 100   | (min) |
|                  |           |           |          |                  |                    | Before Phin                    | 1      | 01       | ·               |            |       |
|                  |           |           |          |                  |                    |                                |        |          |                 |            |       |
|                  |           |           |          |                  |                    |                                |        |          |                 |            |       |
|                  |           |           |          |                  |                    |                                |        |          |                 |            |       |
|                  |           |           |          |                  |                    |                                |        |          |                 |            |       |



# **Roll Length Manage menu**

This menu allows you to check and change the remaining length information of roll media being loaded in the printer.

# 🛄 Note

- This menu will not be displayed when the "Media Initial" menu is set to [Off] on MSM.
- This menu will not be displayed when no roll media is loaded in the printer.
- "Print" or "Simple Print" requires at least 400 mm printable width. Before printing, make sure that there is sufficient width on the media.
- Printable width is increased or decreased by the amount of changes in the origin setting for head traveling direction and the side margins (total of left and right side margins) with reference to the width of media being loaded.

# **Procedures**

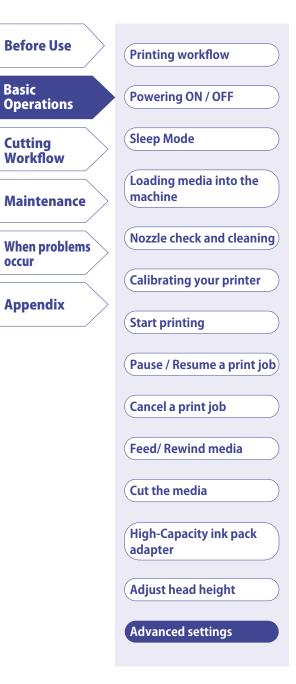


2

Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel P.28

Click the Other Setting tab.

| ter model :  | XPJ-C641        | ISR-P Printo     | r Serial No. : | _                | R           | emote Panel Mode : |        | B | enote Panel Mode | Up |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|-------------|--------------------|--------|---|------------------|----|
|              |                 | Printing has     |                | Printer Info.    | ] [         |                    |        |   |                  |    |
| ter Status   | Printer Con     | trol   Media Set | ting Contou    | r Cutting Settin | gs Advanced | Settin Other S     | etting |   |                  |    |
| Inst. Setter | igt             |                  |                |                  |             | Initialization     |        |   |                  |    |
| Language     | English         | •                | Length         | : mm             | ٠           | Type               | :      | × | Stat             |    |
| Temperatur   | e : Celsius (C) | ·                | Alert Buzzer   | : On             |             |                    |        |   |                  |    |
| Network Co   | ndexiglin       |                  |                |                  |             |                    |        |   |                  |    |
|              |                 | Update           |                | Sta              | a           |                    |        |   |                  |    |
| IP Address   |                 |                  |                |                  |             |                    |        |   |                  |    |
| Subnet Mask  | : 2             | 55.255.255.0     | Þ              |                  |             |                    |        |   |                  |    |
| Galeway      |                 | 1 1 1            |                |                  |             |                    |        |   |                  |    |
| Noll Long    | th Manage       |                  |                |                  |             |                    |        |   |                  |    |
| Roll Length  | : 0#            | •                | Length         | : 0              | [m]         | Print Stop         | : 0#   | × |                  |    |
| Print        | Print           | ٠                | Pre-Print Cut  | 0#               | ٠           | Auto Scan          | 0#     | ٠ |                  |    |
|              |                 | Start            |                |                  |             | Auto Print         | : 0#   | • |                  |    |
| Scan         |                 | Start            |                |                  |             |                    |        |   |                  |    |





# In the Roll Length Manage menu, specify the following settings. Up to 3 roll media can be managed.

- 1. [Roll Length]: Select a roll media.
- Options: <u>Off</u> / Roll1 / Roll2 / Roll3
   \*The underlined option is the default setting.
- 2. [Length]: Enter the length of roll media (m)being loaded.
  - Setting range: 1 m to <u>30 m</u> to 200 m \*The underlined option is the default setting.
- **3.** [Print Stop]: Select whether or not to pause printing when the remaining length of loaded roll media reaches 0 (m).
- Options: <u>Off</u> / On
   \*The underlined option is the default setting.

#### 🛄 Note

- When you replace a roll media, set the Roll Length menu again. Remaining roll length may not be displayed correctly if it is not set.
- The [Print Stop] menu is enabled only when the [Roll Length] menu is set to other than Off

#### Click [Update].

• This will save the change in the machine.

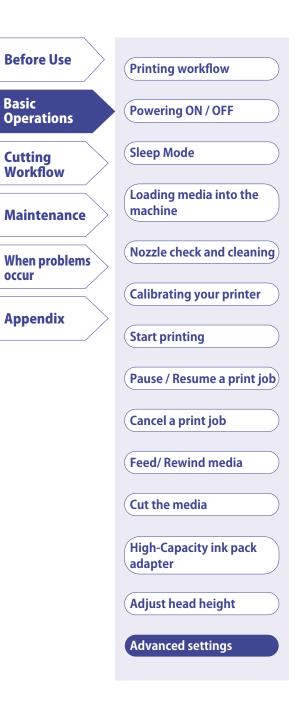
| Remaining roll length may not be displeenu is set to other than Off.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | ayed corre        | ectly if |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------|
| mete Fand                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                   |          |
| Pinter model: XPJ-C6415R-P Pinter Social No.: Remote Panel Mode:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Remote Panel Mode | Update   |
| Status         Priving has been accorded           writer Status (Private Control)         Mainteen accorded           for Status (Private Control)         Mainteen accorded | Thinker Direc.    |          |

PrePrint Cut

Start

Auto Scan

|                                                                                                         | Remote Panel Mode | Update |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|
| s: Printing has been cancelled.                                                                         | Printer Info.     | Exit   |
| er Status   Printer Control   Media Setting   Contour Cutting Settings   Advanced Setting Other Setting |                   |        |
| Initialization                                                                                          |                   |        |
| Language : English v Length : mm v Type :                                                               | Stat              |        |
| Temperature : Celoius (C)  Alext Buzzer : On                                                            |                   |        |
| Network Conligueition                                                                                   |                   |        |
| PAddess :                                                                                               |                   |        |
| Submet Mark : 255.255.255.0 🕨 📄                                                                         |                   |        |
| Galerray :                                                                                              |                   |        |
| Roll Length Manage                                                                                      | 3                 |        |
| RolLength : [0# _ Length : [0 _ [m] Print Stop : [0#                                                    | -                 |        |
| Print  Pre Print Cut : [0#  Auto Scan : [0#                                                             |                   |        |
| Start Auto Print : UII                                                                                  |                   |        |
| Scan : Start                                                                                            |                   |        |



# **Origin setting**

The origin position for printing and cutting (print and cut start position) can be changed.

## 📢 Important ‼

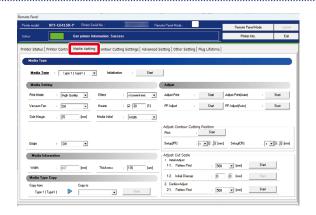
- The Set value (CR) for head traveling direction is saved in the printer and applied to every output.
- The Set value (PF) for media feeding direction is not saved in the printer. When media is fed after you save the change, printing or cutting will start from that position.
- The origin setting can reduce media waste by changing output position. However, do not to use this menu for media that feeding accuracy cannot be guaranteed.
- Printable width is increased or decreased by the amount of changes in the origin setting for head traveling direction and the side margins (total of left and right side margins) with reference to the width of media being loaded.

## Procedure

2

Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel" P.28

Click the [Media Setting] tab.







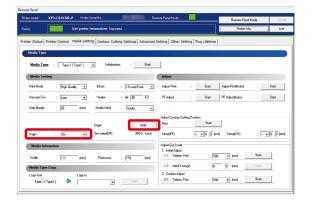
4

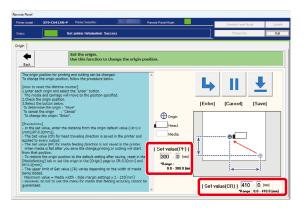
#### Select "On" in the [Origin] menu and then click [Start].

Option : <u>Off</u> / On
 \*The underlined option is the default setting.

# The Origin page appears. Enter the value for the origin position.

- Set value (PF): Media feeding direction (Setting range : 0.0[mm]  $\sim$  300[mm])
- Set value (CR): Head traveling direction (Setting range : <u>0.0[mm]</u> ~ 410\*[mm])
   \*The underlined value is the default setting.



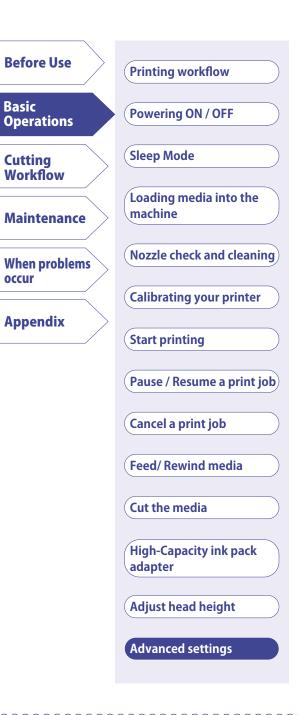


## G Important #

- \*The upper limit of Set value (CR) varies depending on the width of media being loaded.
- Maximum settable value for Set value (CR) = Media width Side margin settings x 2 210 [mm]
   For example:

When the media width is 630 mm and the side margin is set to 20 mm,

maximum settable value for Set value (CR) = 630 - 20 x 2 - 210 = 380 [mm]



## Click [Enter].

5

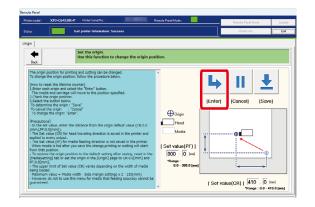
• The media and carriage will move to the position specified.

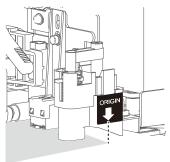
#### 6 Check the origin position.

• To change the origin position, repeat the steps 4 to 6 until the target position is reached.

#### 📢 Important ‼

In the set value, enter the distance from the origin default value (CR: 0.0 [mm], PF: 0.0 [mm]).



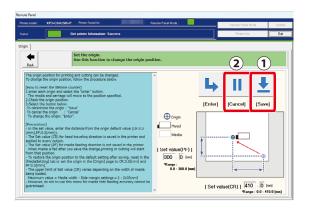


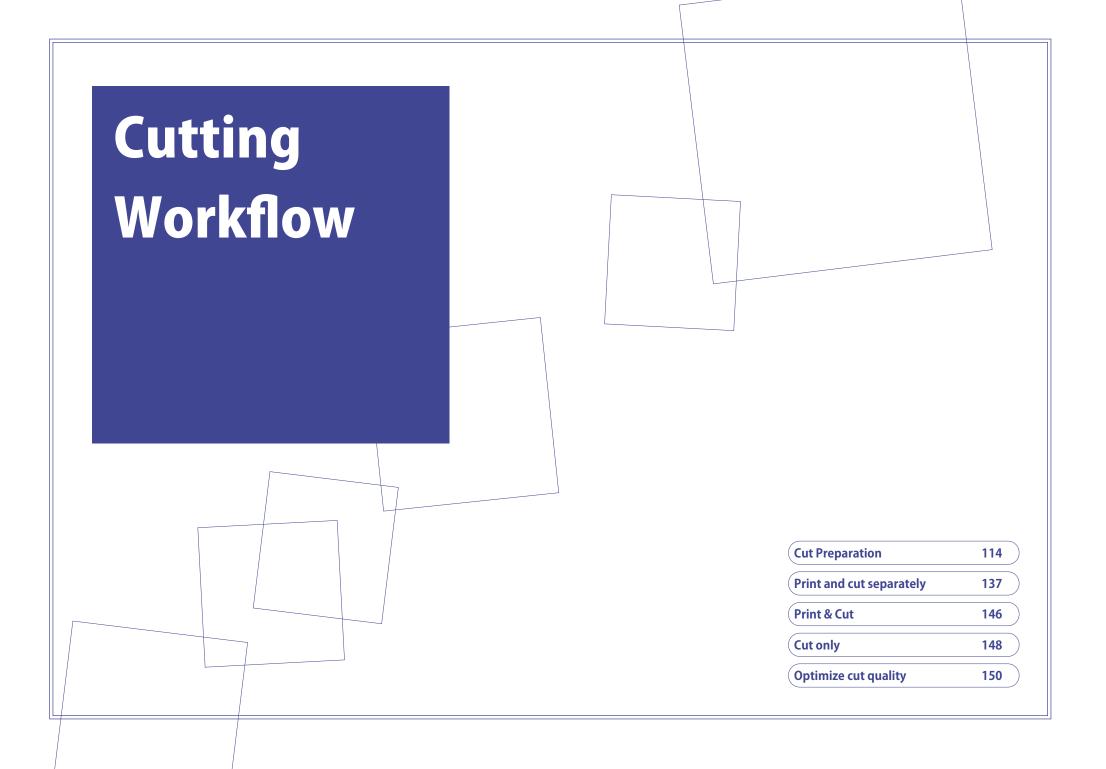
## Click [Save] ( 1 ).

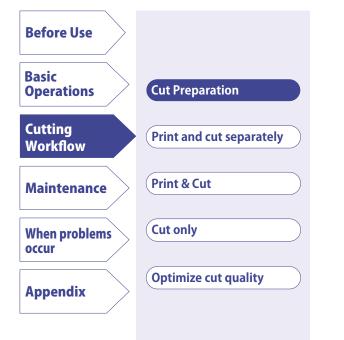
- The origin has been changed.
- Clicking [Cancel] ( 2 ) will return the media and carriage to the original position.

## 🛄 Note

To restore the origin position to the default setting (CR: 0.0 [mm], PF: 0.0 [mm]) after saving, reset in the [Media Setting] tab or set the origin in the [Origin] page to CR: 0.0 [mm] and PF: 0.0 [mm].







# **Cut Preparation**

# **Preparation flow for cutting**

The following is the preparation flow for cutting.

# 1. Install a blade for contour cut on the blade holder.

Install a blade on the blade holder" P.115

# 2. Adjust the blade depth.

"Adjust blade depth" P.117

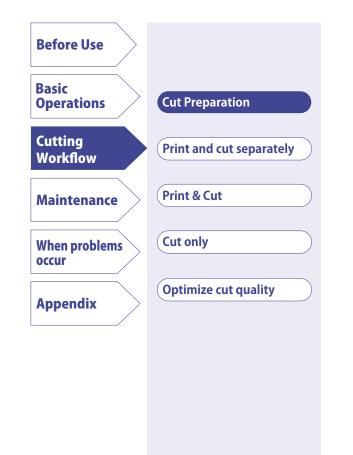
# 3. Install the blade holder on the machine.

Install the blade holder into the machine" P.119

# 4. Run a test cut and adjust as needed.

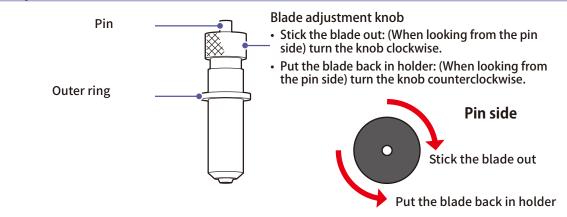
"Run a test cut" P.122

"Adjust the contour cutting position" P.130



# Install a blade on the blade holder

# Name of each part on blade holder



# Note

The blade is installed on the blade holder when the machine is shipped from the factory.

# 🔔 Caution

Press the pin so that the blade comes out. When pressing, keep your finger away from the tip of holder.

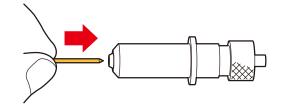
# Installing a blade

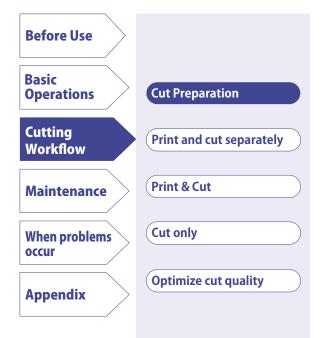
#### Insert the blade into the blade holder.

• When more than two-third of the blade is inserted, it will be attached by magnetic force.

#### 📢 Important!

Using a soft object such as paper, lightly push the tip of the blade holder and check that the blade is in place properly.

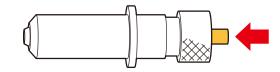


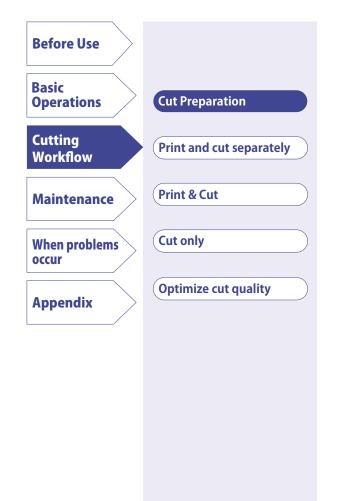


# Removing a blade



Press the pin so that the blade comes out. Grab the blade and pull it from the holder.





# Adjust blade depth

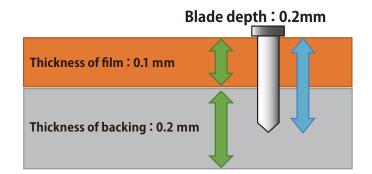
# Target blade depth

One revolution of adjustment knob : 0.5mm Blade depth = Thickness of film + Thickness of backing material /2

# Example of blade depth

When the media thickness is 0.3mm (Thickness of film: 0.1 mm, Thickness of backing material: 0.2mm):

Blade depth =0.1mm+(0.2mm/2)=0.2mm



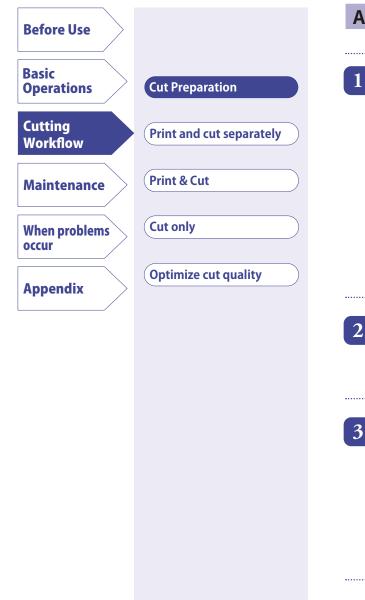
Use the above as a guide when making an adjustment.

## 🛄 Note

• The above is the adjustment for contour cutting. For through cutting, adjust the blade depth so that the blade cuts through the backing material.

Blade depth for through cutting = Thickness of film + Thickness of backing material + 0.1 mm

- For a cut data containing both contour and through cutting, you should adjust the blade to the depth for through cutting.
- "Cutting types" P.133 ,"Create a cutting data" P.134

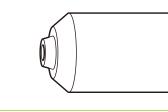


## **Adjustment steps**

Turn the adjustment knob counterclockwise so that the tip of blade and the tip of blade holder are at the same position.

#### G Important!

Check that the tip of the blade is not sticking out.



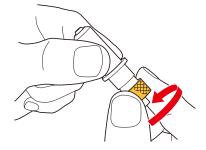
Calculate the blade depth using the calculation formula of target blade depth (thickness of film + thickness of backing material)

Target blade depth" P.117

Turn the adjustment knob clockwise to stick out the blade and adjust the blade depth.

#### G Important!

- One revolution of adjustment knob will stick out (or store) the blade 0.5 mm.
- Once adjusted, make sure not to turn the adjustment knob. This will change the blade depth.





# Install the blade holder into the machine

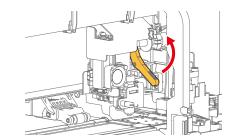
Open the front cover.

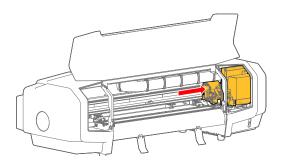
Raise the head adjustment lever to change the print head height to "High".

#### G Important!

Make sure to set it to "High". The print head may contact the pinch roller arm and get damaged.

Push the carriage to unlock it.



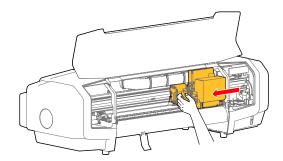


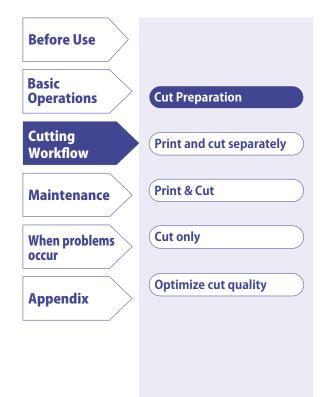


Manually move the carriage to the platen where you can easily install the blade holder.

#### G Important!

Hold the print head adjustment lever to move it.





#### Attach the blade holder.

5

- 1. Loosen the thumbscrew.
- 2. Open the holder fixing plate.

## G Important!

Do not remove the thumbscrew from the holder fixing plate..

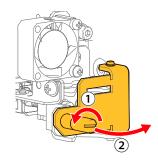
**3.** Fit the outer ring of the blade holder in the gap between A and B.

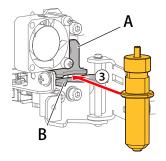
#### 4. Close the holder fixing plate.

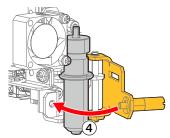
#### 5. Tighten the thumbscrew.

## C Important!

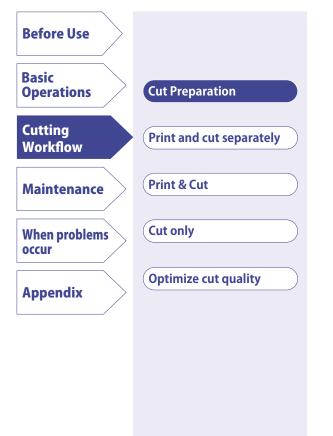
Insert the thumbscrew straight into the screw hole and tighten. If it is slanted, the screw may not be tightened properly, causing damage to the cutter and other part.





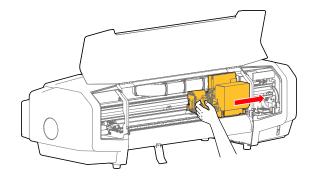








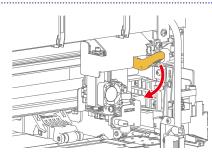
Move the carriage back in place to lock it.



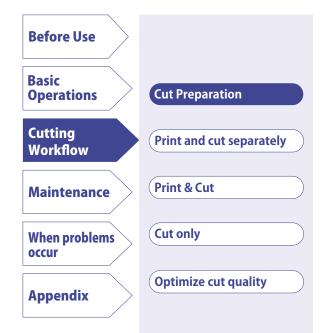


8

Lower the lever to change the head height to "Low".



#### Close the front cover.



# Run a test cut

To obtain good cutting results, run a test cut and adjust cutting parameters. Adjust these settings for media being used.

## Steps



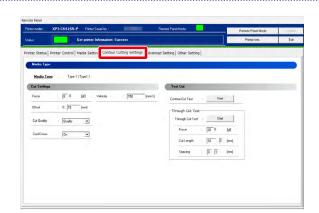
Load media to be used for test cut. "Loading media into the machine" P.52

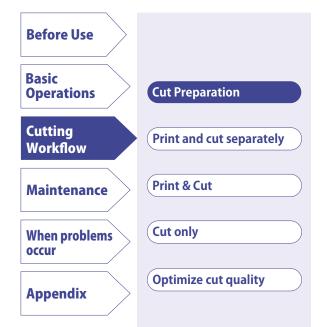


Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



Click the [Contour Cutting Settings] tab.

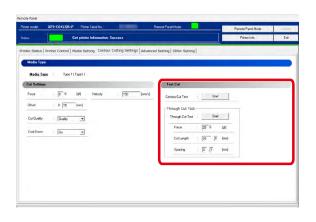


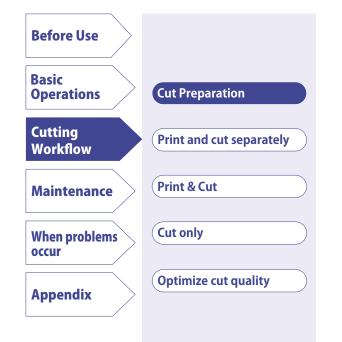




Select the cutting method from [Test Cut] and run a test cut.

"Test cut for contour cutting" P.124"Test cut for through cutting" P.127



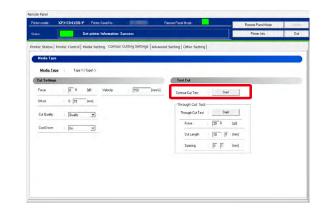


# Test cut for contour cutting



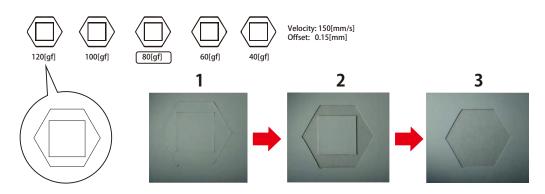
2

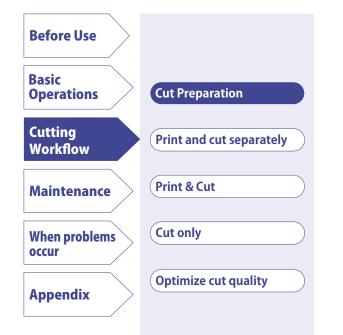
• The machine cuts the test cut pattern.



#### Examine the test cut result.

- A total of 5 patterns with the current cut force (marked with square) and  $\pm$  40gf and  $\pm$  20gf cut force will be cut. Check all of the 5 patterns of the test cut model to evaluate comprehensively.
- 1. Check the shape of square.
- 2. Remove a hexagon.
- 3. Remove a square.



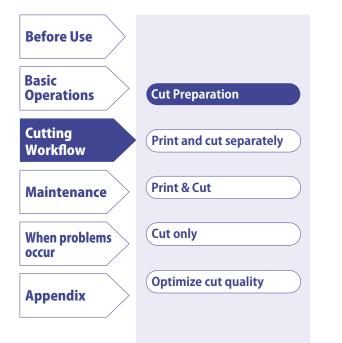


**3** Refer to the table below and enter the setting values in MSM as needed.

|                                               | Problems                                                                          | H         | low to calibrate       |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|------------------------|
|                                               | Rounded corners                                                                   |           | UP                     |
| <ol> <li>Check the shape of square</li> </ol> | Corners with flags                                                                | Offset    | DOWN                   |
|                                               |                                                                                   |           | DOWN                   |
|                                               | Peeling on corners                                                                | Cut force | DOWN                   |
| 2. Remove a hexagon                           | A hexagon is removed cleanly and a square is kept on the backing material.        | Cut force | No adjustment required |
|                                               | A hexagon is not partially removed.                                               |           |                        |
|                                               | A square is also removed together.                                                |           | UP                     |
|                                               | A faint cut mark appears on the backing.                                          |           | No adjustment required |
| 3. Remove a square                            | No cut mark appears on the backing.                                               | Cut force | UP                     |
|                                               | A deep cut mark appears on the backing or the backing was completely cut through. |           | DOWN                   |

| Total (Type 1)         Text Dut           Settinger         Text Dut           ce         (0)         (p)         Velocity         (150)         (pm/r)           ce         (0)         (p)         (b)         (p)         (p)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | _ |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--|
| and the second s |   |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |  |
| set : 0. 15 [mn] Through Cut Test                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |   |  |
| z Quality : Quality - Through Out Text : Start                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |   |  |
| ol Down : Do 💌                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |   |  |
| Cut Length [10].                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |   |  |
| Spacing [0 . [1 (nm]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |   |  |

Remote Danel



Repeat a test cut and calibration until you get good results.

## **Note**

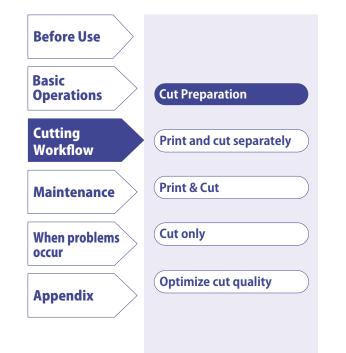
4

If peeling occurs when cutting the actual design, adjust the blade depth and cut force. **Adjust blade depth** P.117

|                              | Problem                                                                           | Blade depth |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Check the shape of square | Peeling on corners                                                                | decrease    |
| 2 Dama and a have start      | A hexagon is not partially removed.                                               | Increase    |
| 2. Remove a hexagon          | A square is also removed together.                                                | Increase    |
|                              | No cut mark appears on the backing.                                               | Increase    |
| 3. Remove a square           | A deep cut mark appears on the backing or the backing was completely cut through. | decrease    |

## 🛄 Note

The cutting conditions can be changed in VerteLith as well. Set cutting conditions" P.150

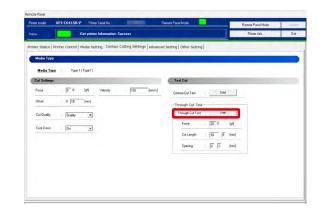


# Test cut for through cutting



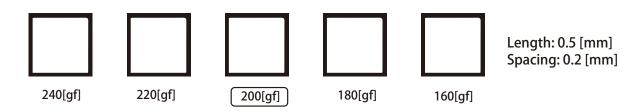
2

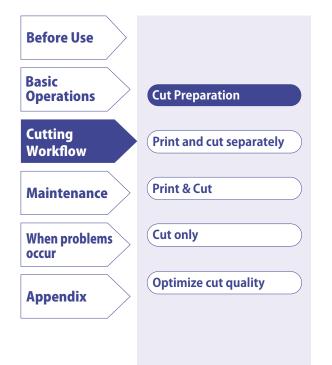
• The machine cuts the test cut pattern.



#### Examine the test cut result.

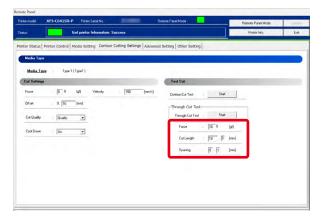
- A total of 5 patterns with the current cut force (marked with square) and ± 40gf and ± 20gf cut force will be cut.
  Check all of the 5 patterns to evaluate comprehensively.
- 1. Check the shape of square.
- 2. Pop out the square from the media.





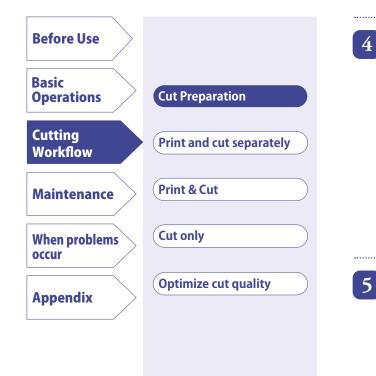
3 Refer to the table below and enter the setting values in MSM as needed.

|                               | Problems                                       | How to calibrate |      |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------|------|
|                               | Rounded corners                                |                  | UP   |
| . Check the shape of square   | Corners with flags                             | Offset           | DOWN |
| . Check the shape of square   | Dealing on corners                             |                  | DOWN |
|                               | Peeling on corners                             | Cut force        | DOWN |
|                               |                                                | Cut force        | UP   |
|                               | Unable to pop it out                           | Cut length       | UP   |
|                               |                                                | Spacing DOWN     |      |
| . Pop out the square from the |                                                | Cut force        | UP   |
| media                         | Unable to remove backing material<br>partially | Cut length       | UP   |
|                               |                                                | Spacing          | DOWN |
|                               | A square was released from the media           | Cut length       | DOWN |
|                               | during cutting                                 | Spacing          | UP   |



1.

2.



Repeat a test cut and calibration until you get good results.

## **Note**

If you cannot pop out the design from media when cutting the actual design, adjust the blade depth. **Adjust blade depth" P.117** 

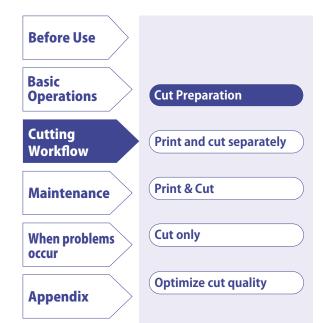
|                               | Problem                                             | Blade depth |  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|
|                               | Unable to pop it out                                | Increase    |  |
| Pop out the square from media | Unable to remove backing material partially         | Increase    |  |
|                               | A square was released from the media during cutting | decrease    |  |

Determine the optimum settings and enter in VerteLith.

**Set cutting conditions**" P.150

## G Important!

For through cut, the cut settings entered for test cut in MSM are not saved in VerteLith. Make sure to enter the settings in VerteLith.



# Adjust the contour cutting position

Align the contour cutting with the printed object. Adjust it for media being used.

## Procedure



2

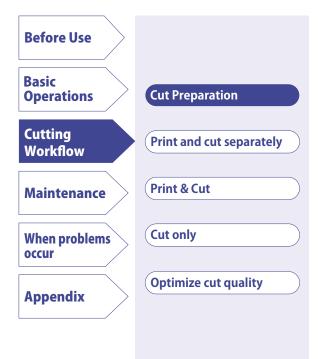
3

Correction of the machine P.52

Start MSM and open the remote panel.

Click the [Media Setting] tab.

| ter model : XF    | PJ-CG41SR-P (    | Vinter Serial No. :    |                         | Remote Panel Node .                     |               | Remote Panel       | Mode  | Up   |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|-------|------|
| he [              | Get pr           | inter Information: Sur | ce11                    |                                         |               | Printer Inte       | 2     | E    |
| ter Status   Prin | ter Contro Media | Setting ontour Cu      | tting Settings Advances | d Setting Other Setting F               | lug Lifetime  |                    |       |      |
| Media Type        |                  |                        |                         |                                         |               |                    |       |      |
| 910080 1326       |                  |                        |                         |                                         |               |                    |       |      |
| Media Two:        | : Type 1 ( Type1 | ) 💌 Initializ          | ation : Start           |                                         |               |                    |       |      |
| Media Setting     |                  |                        |                         | Adjust                                  |               |                    |       |      |
| Print Mode        | : High Quality   | ▼ Effect               | : ScreenFinel.          | Adjust Print :                          | Stat          | Adjust Prink(Auto) | : Sta | at   |
| Vacuum Fan        | : 01             | Heater                 | : 🔽 🔟 🛙                 | PF Adjust :                             | Start         | PF Adjust(Auto)    | : Ste | art  |
| Side Margin       | : 25 0           | m) Media Initial       | : Width 💌               | ]                                       |               |                    |       |      |
|                   |                  |                        |                         | Adjust Contour Cutting                  |               | 1                  |       |      |
|                   |                  |                        |                         | Past :                                  | Start         |                    |       |      |
| Origin            | : 01             | •                      |                         | Solup(PF) :                             | • • 0 .0 [mm] | Setup[CR]          | • • 0 | N 0. |
| Hedia Inform      | ation            |                        |                         | Adjust Cut Scole                        |               |                    |       |      |
| Width             | : 407 Ø          | m) Thickness           | : [170 [un]             | 1-1. Pattern Print                      | : 500         | • (nm)             | Stat  |      |
| Media Type Co     | .09              |                        |                         | 1-2. Initial Change                     | : 0           | . 0 (mm)           | Stat  |      |
| Copy from         | Cop              | ay to                  |                         | 2. Confirm Adjust<br>2.1. Pattern Print | : 600         | • (nm)             | Stat  |      |

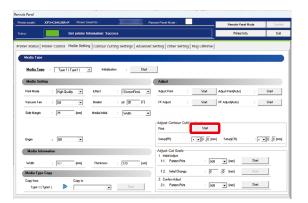


From [Adjust] > [Adjust Contour Cutting] > [Print], click [Start].

• The machine begins printing a pattern.

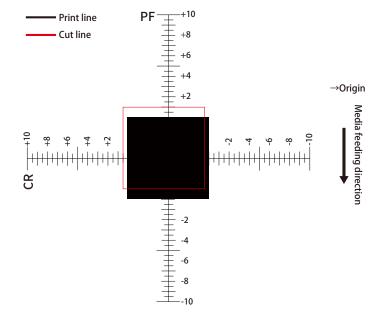
4

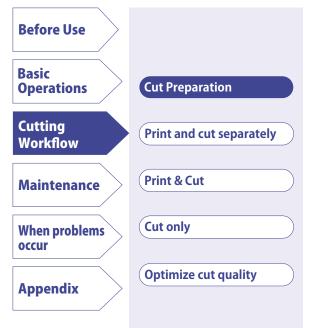
5



#### Check the cut line (red line) in the adjustment pattern.

- Measure the amount of misalignment between the cut line and the print line by eye. One scale in the adjustment pattern equals to 0.5 mm.
- In the example below, the red line is misaligned +1.0 mm in the PF (vertical) direction and +0.5mm in the CR (horizontal) direction.







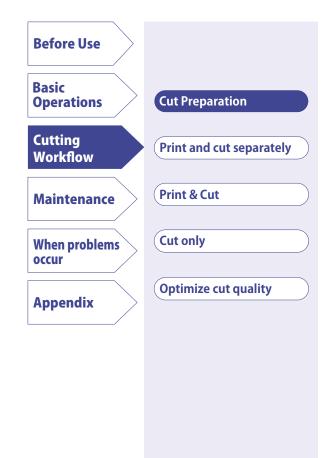
# Enter the measured length in the PF adjustment value and CR adjustment value respectively on MSM.

- In the example of step 5, you will enter PF +1.0 (mm) and CR +0.5 (mm).
- If an adjustment value is already entered, add the measured length to the adjustment value currently entered.

#### For example:

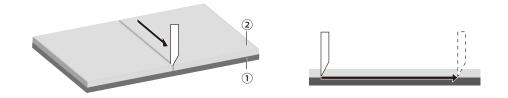
when PF: +0.3, CR: 0.2 are already entered, you will add the above PF: +1.0, CR: +0.5 to the current values so that the PF adjustment value will be +1.3 (+0.3 + (+1.0) and CR adjustment value will be +0.3 (-0.2 + (+0.5)).

| er model: XPJ-C641SR-P Printer Senal No. :                                        | Remote Panel Mode: Update                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| #: Get printer Information: Success                                               | Plinter Info. Exit                                                         |
| er Status   Printer Control   Media Settling   Contour Cutting Settings   Advance | ed Setting   Other Setting                                                 |
| Hedia Type                                                                        |                                                                            |
| Media Tuer : Type I (Type I ) V Initialization : Stat                             | Add Media : Stat                                                           |
| Modia Setting                                                                     | Adjust                                                                     |
| Pint Mode : Effect : Finelifing v                                                 | Adjust Print : Stat Adjust Print/Autol : Stat                              |
| Vacuum Fan : High  Heater : 17 45 [C]                                             | PF Adjust : Start PF Adjust(Auto) : Start                                  |
| Side Margin : 16 (mm) Media Initial : Width                                       | -                                                                          |
|                                                                                   | Adjust Contour Cutting Position<br>Piret : Star                            |
| Media Information                                                                 | Setup(PF) :                                                                |
| Width : [511 [mm] Thickness : [280 [um]                                           | Adjust Cut Scale<br>1. Iniki Adjust<br>1-1. Patern Print : 500 v (mm) Stat |
| Media Type Copy                                                                   | 1-2. Initial Change : 0 .0 (mm) Stat                                       |
| Copy Iron Copy to Type 1 (Type1)                                                  | 2. Continn-Ardput<br>2-1. Pattern Print : 500 v (mm) Stat                  |

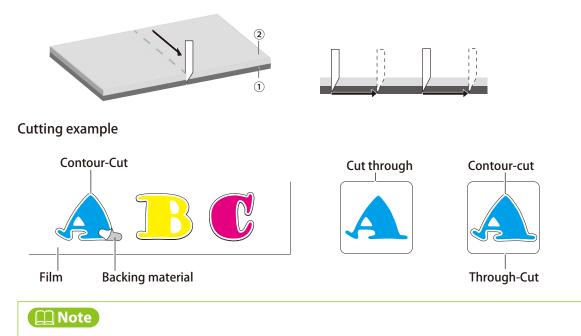


# **Cutting types**

 $\bullet$  Contour Cut : Cuts only the film (2) , not the backing material (1) .



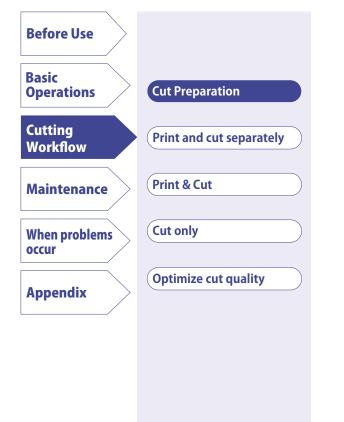
• Through Cut : Perf cuts through the film (2) and the backing material (1) so that some parts are not completely separated from the media. You can pop out each design with the backing after cutting.



• Set the cutting conditions needed for media being used or required quality level.

**Set cutting conditions**" P.150

• The cutting mat and the edge of blade wear faster with through cut.



# **Create a cutting data**

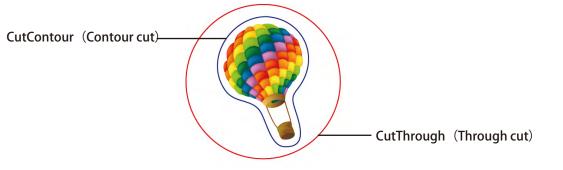
You will set the color defined as cutting line in VerteLith to the data.

The following is the color setting you will create a cutting data in Adobe Illustrator. Create a new swatch according to the cutting type.

Through cut

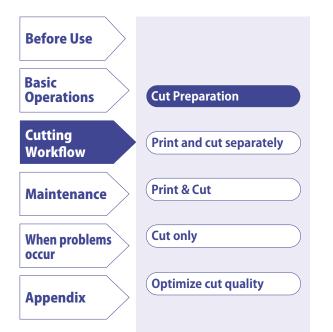
| Contour cut |            |
|-------------|------------|
| New swatch  |            |
| Name        | CutContour |
| Color type  | Spot color |

| New swatch |            |
|------------|------------|
| Name       | CutThrough |
| Color type | Spot color |





A file name such as "CutContour1", "CutThrough\_A" can be used.



# Types of crop marks

To align the cut line with the printing position, you will need to add and print the crop marks around the graphic. When cutting, the sensor automatically detects the crop marks to align the position.

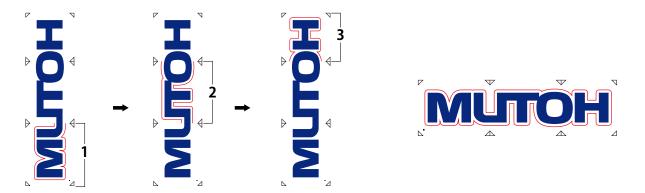
# 4-point positioning

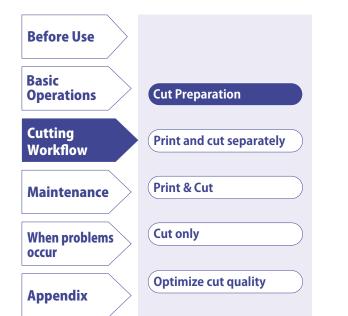
This is used for standard cutting. 4-point positioning prints crop marks on four corners of the print data. The mark on the front right corner is the origin mark ( 1).

# Segmental Cutting

(1)

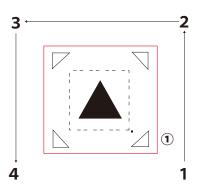
Use this option when you cut data more than 1 m long. It divides the data into multiple segments and prints crop marks at the four corners of each segment. This option allows for more accurate cutting because cutting is performed in order while correcting position by segment.

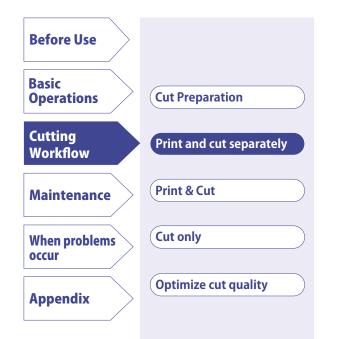




# Mark detection order

The machine detects the crop marks from the front right corner in the counter clockwise direction. Load media so that the origin crop mark ( ① ) is positioned on the front right of the machine (origin side).





# **Print and cut separately**

Use this procedure when you want to remove the media after printed, laminate it or do other treatment and reload the media for cutting. When reloading media, crop marks printed by VerteLith are used for alignment.

# **Operation flow**

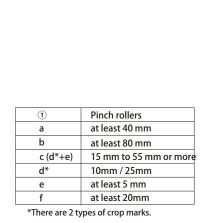
**1.** Print a design with crop marks.

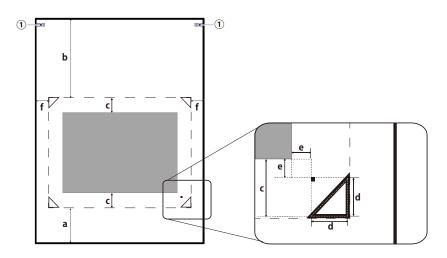
Step1. Print" P.138

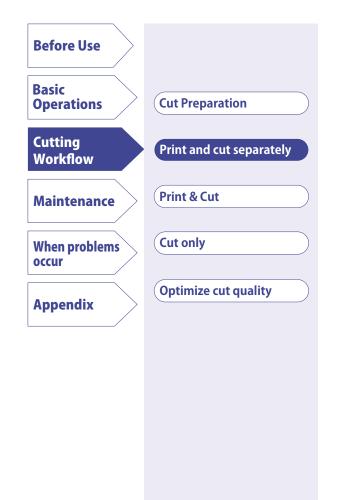
2. Reload the media and perform cutting. (with reading crop marks)

3 "Step2. Cut" P.144

# Required media size for automatic detection of crop marks







# Step1. Print

#### G Important #

Do not place any obstacles in the media feed direction. If the media feed direction is obstructed, the quality of printing and cutting will be adversely affected.



#### Load media.

**W** "Loading media into the machine" P.52

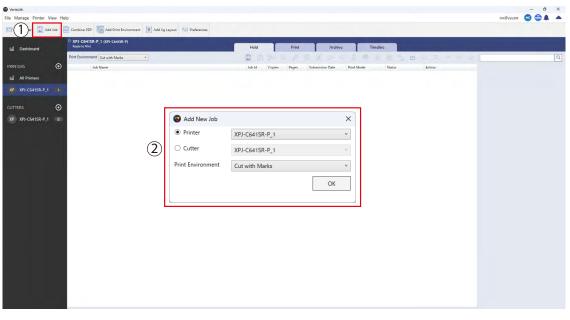


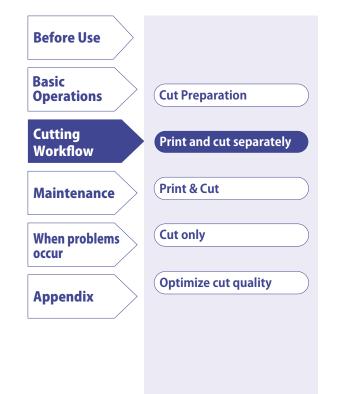
## Start VerteLith.

\* "Launching VerteLith" P.37

## 3 Click [Add Job] ( 1).

Select the printer and the print environment you will add a job and click [OK] (2).





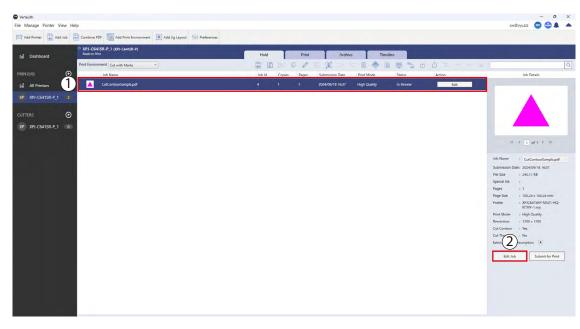
Select a data containing cut lines ( 1 ) and click [Open] ( 2 ).

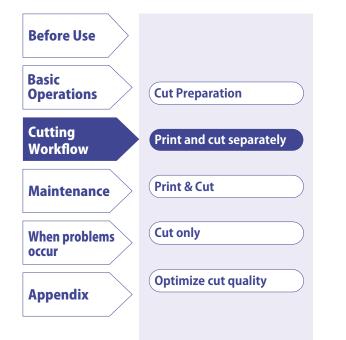
Treate a cutting data" P.134

4

| 🚱 Open                                                                                    |                    |                  |                   |                                          | ×    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------|------|
| $\leftarrow \rightarrow \checkmark \uparrow$                                              | ≅ →                | Documents        | ~ C Search        | Documents                                | P    |
| Organize 👻 Ne                                                                             | w folder           |                  |                   | ≣ • □                                    | 8    |
| A Home                                                                                    | _                  | Name             | Date modified     | Туре                                     | Size |
| 📩 Gallery                                                                                 | (1) 🗖              | CutContourSample | 9/18/2024 4:37 PM | Microsoft Edge P                         | 24   |
| <ul> <li>↓ Downloads</li> <li>i Documents</li> <li>♥ Pictures</li> <li>Ø Music</li> </ul> |                    |                  |                   |                                          |      |
|                                                                                           | File <u>n</u> ame: | CutContourSample |                   | b Files(*.pdf;*.PDF; *.jpe<br>Open Cance |      |

5 Select the job added (①) and click [Edit job] (②).

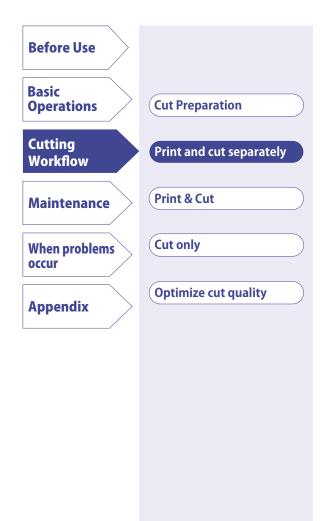




6

In the General tab, deselect the checkbox "Cut continuously after printing". VerteLith - 0 X Login Error 🚾 😁 🌲 🔺 File Manage Printer View Help XPJ-C641SR-P\_1 > PrintEnvironment\_1 > CutContourSample.pdf C Edit Job Settings XPJ-C641SR-P\_1 (Error) General Printer Pr... Layout Color Ma... Color Bal... Ink Control Spot Colo Step & Re... Color Rep. Crop Marks Tiling Jig Layout Print Notes արտարո սիստանո Job Id: Memo: File Name: CutContourSample.or Job Name Page Size: 100.24 x 100.24 mm Pages: File Size: 240.17 KB 1200 x 1200 Options ✓ Optimize Media Intelligent Nesting After Rin Hold for Operator Revie Print from Botton Output to File Move to Hold Print & Cut Cut cont usly after printing X . Y .- C 🗄 100% V Q Q Color White Varnish Show Cut Lines Revert Set as Default Save Submit for Print Cancel





#### Set the crop marks.

- Click [Crop Marks] tab (1).
- Select the "Enable Crop Marks" checkbox and the "Crop Marks for Cut Devices" checkbox (2) .
- Select a mark from the Mark Type option (3).\*<sup>1</sup>
- Select the checkbox "Advance feed after print" and enter the required margin (more than 80 mm) ( ④).\*2
- Click [Save] (⑤).

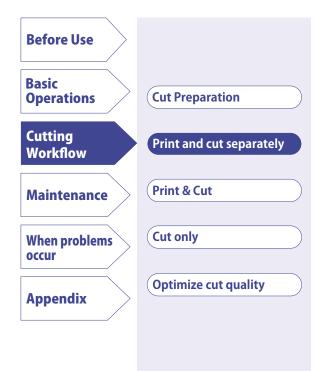
## Note

- \*1 For data that exceeds 1 m in length, selecting Segmental Cutting will improve cutting accuracy.
- **Segmental Cutting**" P.135

## G Important /

\*2 🐨 "Required media size for automatic detection of crop marks" P.137

| Vertelin                                                                                                                                               |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------|-----------|-----------------------------|------|---------|---|-----------------------|---------|------------------|
| File Manage Printer View Help                                                                                                                          |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| XPI-C6415R-9_1 > PrintEnvironment_1 > CutContourSample.pdf                                                                                             |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| C Edit Job Settings                                                                                                                                    |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| XPJ-C641SR.P_1 (Ready to Print)                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| General Printer Pr., Luyout Color Ma Color B.L. Ink Contr Spot CoL. Color R. Corp Marks Grommets Tiling Trimming Step & R Jig Luyout Print Not Summary |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       | -                               |      | -         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| (2)                                                                                                                                                    | Enable Crop Marks                     |                                 |      |           | 600 530                     |      | 450 400 |   | 300 250               | 200 150 | 100              |
|                                                                                                                                                        | Crop Marks for Cut Devices            |                                 |      | F 📕       |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| └ L                                                                                                                                                    |                                       |                                 |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        | Associated Cut Environment<br>Vendor: | MUTOH                           |      | E.        |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      | E "       |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        | Cutter Model:                         | Xpertlet  CutEnvironment_1      |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        | Cut Environment:                      |                                 |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       | Tool Sett                       | ings | = #       |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| Г                                                                                                                                                      | Mark Type:                            | 4-Point Positioning  V Black  V |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| $\bigcirc$                                                                                                                                             | Mark Color:                           |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| 3                                                                                                                                                      | Mark Size:                            | Large                           |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       | [       |                  |
| L                                                                                                                                                      | Line Width:                           | ○ Small                         |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| (4)                                                                                                                                                    | Advance feed after print              | 80 🔶 mm                         |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
| ~                                                                                                                                                      |                                       |                                 |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      | = 8       |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       | N       |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      | E         |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      | ✓ Color W | hite 📃 Varnish 🗌 Show Cut L | ines |         |   |                       |         | X: Y: O          |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         | _ |                       |         |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   | Revert Set as Default | Save    | Submit for Print |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       | (5)     |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       | J       |                  |
|                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                                 |      |           |                             |      |         |   |                       |         |                  |



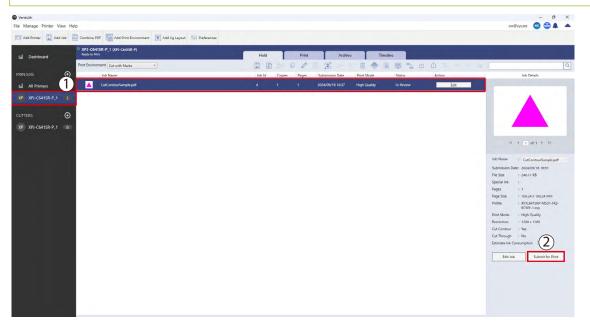
#### Select the job added to the printer ( 1 ) and click [Submit for Print] ( 2 ).

- The job moves to the Print queue and printing begins.
- The job automatically moves to the Hold queue after printing.

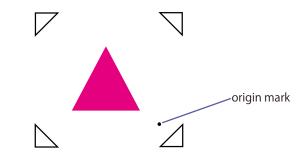
## Note

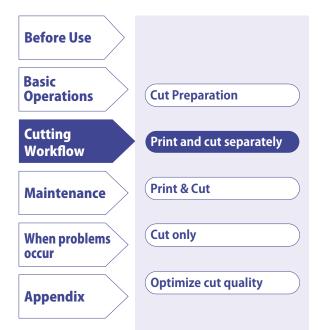
8

#### To change the print settings, click [Edit Job].



#### Example of image printed with crop marks





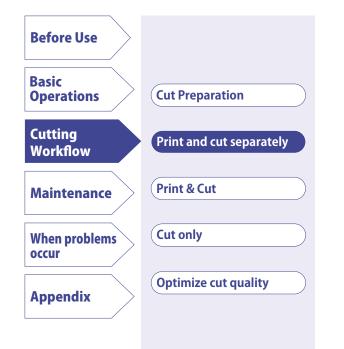
Cut the sheet off the roll media.

G Important /

9

At least 80 mm of blank space from the bottom edge of the crop mark is required.

**B** "Required media size for automatic detection of crop marks" P.137



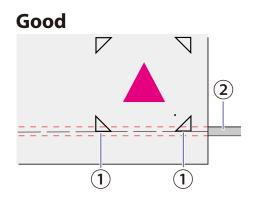
# Step2. Cut

#### G Important /

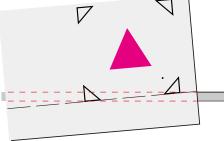
- In MSM, configure the Media Initial and Heater settings as follows:
- Media Initial: "Width" or "Off"
- Heater: "Off"
- In the following cases, the machine cannot read the crop marks:
- ① Crop marks printed on colored media.
- (2) The media surface has dirt.
- ${\ensuremath{\mathfrak{3}}}$  The media has wrinkles.

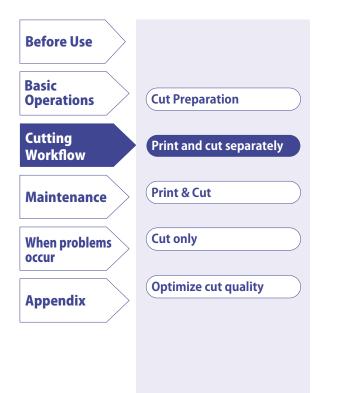
#### Load the media printed with crop marks into the machine.

- Media is loaded with origin crop mark positioned on the front right of the printer. Load it so that the bottom edges of the two crop marks on the media are aligned horizontally on the cutting mat (2).
- The media should not be skewed more than five degrees.









2

Select a cutter (1) . Select a cut environment (2) and a cutting job (3) , and click [Submit for Cut] (4) .

- The sensor reads the crop marks and cutting begins.
- The job automatically moves to the Hold queue of the print environment after cutting.

#### G Important !

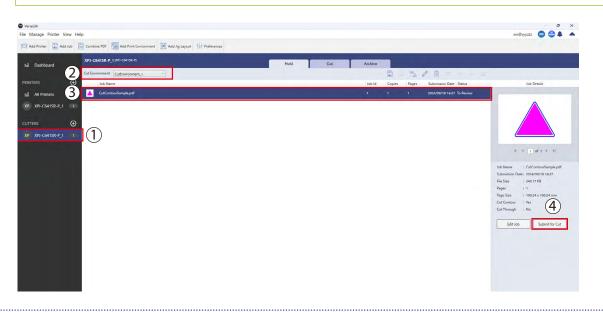
When the machine failed to read the cropmarks, the error LED will turn on. Follow these steps to address the problem.

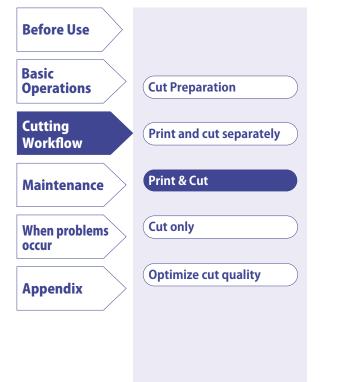
- 1. Check the error details in [Status Information] on MSM.
- Check the message/ error/ warning" P.228
- 2. Follow an appropriate instruction depending on the error type.
- "Crop mark read error(Media set error)" P.234
- "Crop mark read error(Media Skew Error)" P.234
- Crop mark read error(Mark \* read error)" P.234

### **Note**

To change the cutting conditions, click [Edit Job].

Set cutting conditions" P.150





# **Print & Cut**

Print and Cut performs printing followed by cutting. You will need output data for both printing and cutting.

#### G Important /

For Print and Cut method, please note the following points:

• Make sure to completely dry your print before performing cutting. You can specify the time interval (for ink drying) in MSM. An appropriate drying time varies by types of media.

#### **Specify the ink drying time**" P.106

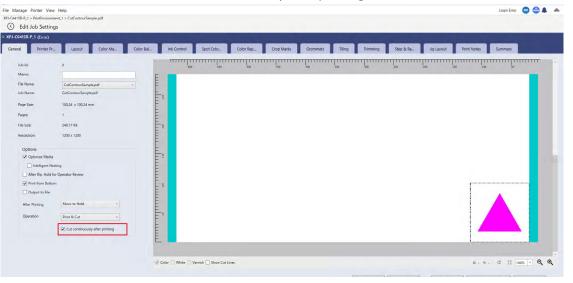
• Leaving media warm by the heater will cause poor cutting quality. The Cool Down menu allows the machine to wait until the heater is cooled down before cutting.

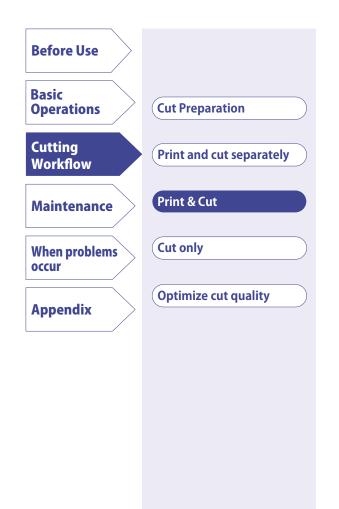
#### **Cooling down setting**" P.104

• Do not place any objects on the media feeding direction. If media feeding is interrupted, this will affect printing or cutting quality.

#### • Follow the step 1 "Print" in "Print and cut separately" to print a job.

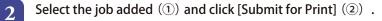
- **Step1. Print**" P.138
- In the [General] tab, select the "Cut continuously after printing" checkbox.





### **Note**

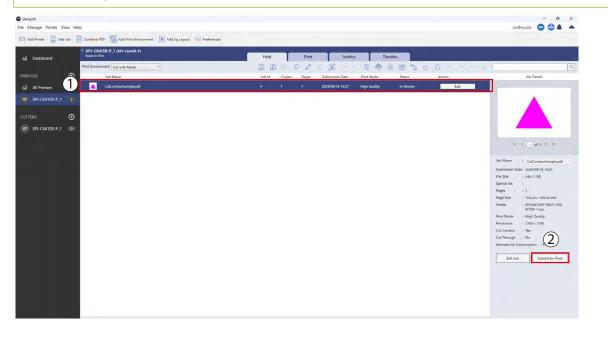
For print and cut, cutting can also be performed without crop marks.



- The job sent to the machine moves to the Print queue and printing begins.
- The job moves to the Cut queue after printing.
- After cutting is complete, the job moves to the Hold queue.

#### **Note**

- To change the cutting conditions, click [Edit Job].
- **Set cutting conditions**" P.150





# **Cut only**

#### G Important /

Set the heater to [Off].

• Do not place any objects on the media feeding direction. If media feeding is interrupted, this will affect printing or cutting quality.



## Load media.

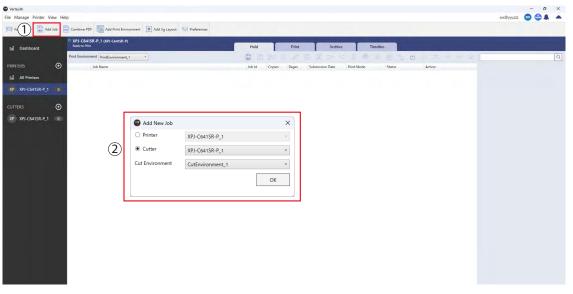
 $\circledast$  "Loading media into the machine"  $\mbox{P.52}$ 

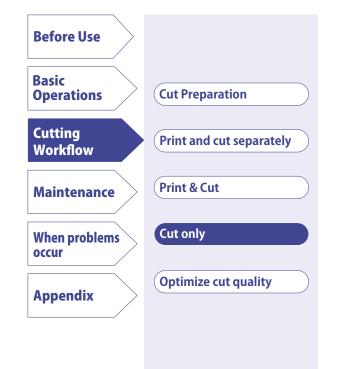


#### Start VerteLith. Start VerteLith" P.37

## Click [Add Job] (①).

Select the cutter and cut environment to which the job is added and click [OK] (2) .





## Select a data containing cut lines ( 1 ) and click [Open] ( 2 ).

Treate a cutting data" P.134

4

5

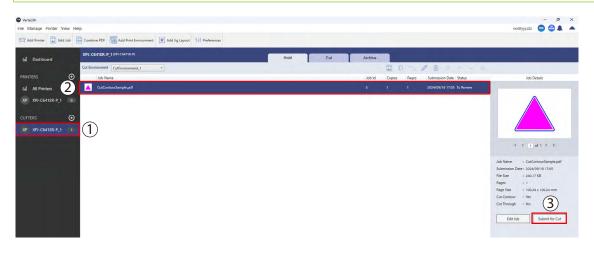
| 😨 Open                                                             |                    |                    |                   |                                              | ×        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------|
| $\leftarrow$ $\rightarrow$ $\checkmark$ $\uparrow$                 | ₿ >                | Documents          | ~ C Se            | arch Documents                               | <i>م</i> |
| Organize 💌 Ne                                                      | ew folder          |                    |                   | ≣ ▾ 🔲                                        | 0        |
| A Home                                                             | _                  | Name               | Date modified     | Туре                                         | Size     |
| 🔁 Gallery                                                          | (1) 🖸              | 🖞 CutContourSample | 9/18/2024 4:37 PM | Microsoft Edge P                             | 24       |
| <ul> <li>Downloads</li> <li>Documents</li> <li>Pictures</li> </ul> |                    |                    |                   |                                              |          |
|                                                                    | File <u>n</u> ame: | CutContourSample   | 2                 | I Job Files(*.pdf;*.PDF; *.jpe<br>Open Cance |          |

#### Select a cutter (1) . Select a cutting job (2) and click [Submit for Cut] (3) .

- The job sent to the machine moves to the Cut queue and cutting begins.
- The job automatically moves to the Hold queue after cutting.

## **Note**

#### To change the cutting settings, click [Edit Job].





# **Optimize cut quality**

Cutting conditions can be set in detail according to the media being used or cutting shape. Before cutting, run a test cut and adjust cutting conditions several times to find the optimal settings.

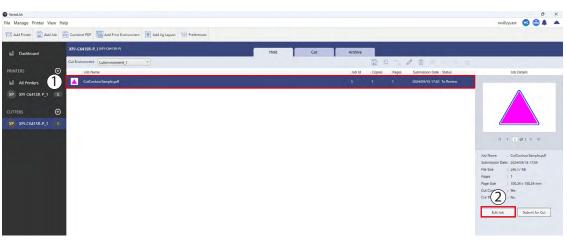
## Set cutting conditions

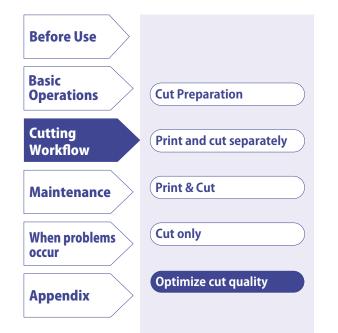
## **Procedure**



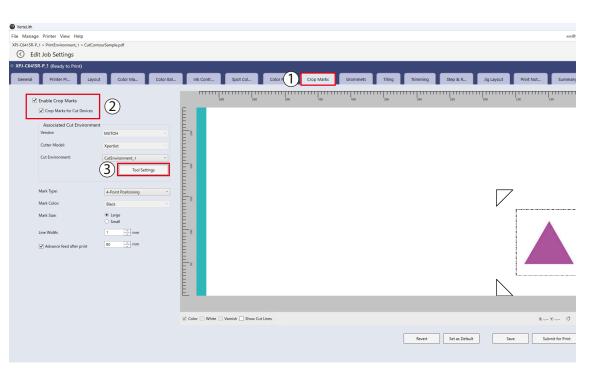
Run a test cut and examine the test cut result. Run a test cut" P.122

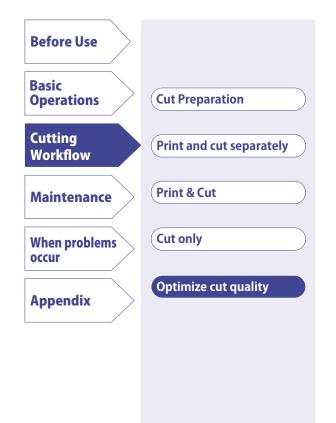
## Select a job ( 1) and click [Job Edit] ( 2).





- Click the Crop Marks tab ( ① ).
  - Select [Enable Crop Marks] and [Crop Marks for Cut Devices] checkboxes (2).
    Click [Tool Settings] (3).





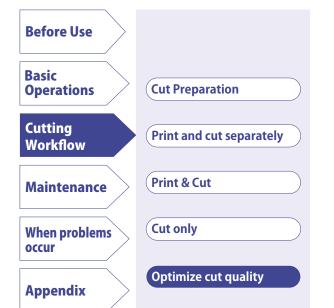


Select the items you want to change and enter the value. **Cutting conditions**" P.153

| • | • ① Cut Contour: Setting items for contour cutting |
|---|----------------------------------------------------|
| • | • ② Cut Through: Setting items for through cutting |
|   |                                                    |

| 😵 Tool     | Settings         |             | × |
|------------|------------------|-------------|---|
|            |                  |             | _ |
|            | Cut Contour      |             |   |
|            | Cut Force        | 80 🗳 gf     |   |
|            | Cut Acceleration | 0.05 💍 G    |   |
| 1          | ✓ Cut Speed      | 150 A mm/s  |   |
|            | ✓ Blade Offset   | 0.15 nm     |   |
|            | Cut Count        | 1           |   |
|            |                  |             | _ |
|            | Cut Through      |             |   |
|            | Cut Force        | 200 🔶 gf    |   |
|            | Cut Acceleration | 0.05 G      |   |
| (2)        | ✓ Cut Speed      | 150 A mm/s  |   |
| $\bigcirc$ | ✓ Blade Offset   | 0.15 A mm   |   |
|            | Cut Count        | 1           |   |
|            | Cutting length   | 10 🔶 mm     |   |
|            | Spacing          | 0.1 nm      |   |
|            |                  |             |   |
|            |                  |             |   |
|            |                  | Save Cancel |   |
|            |                  |             |   |

The values shown in this image are the default values.



#### • Cutting conditions

| Setting items        | Setting range | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cut Force [gf]       | 30-300        | <ul> <li>The pressure that the blade comes down onto media.</li> <li>Contour cut: Too much pressure will leave the blade holder marks on the media or cut through the backing material.</li> <li>Through cut: Too much pressure will shorten the life of the blade.</li> </ul> |
| Cut Acceleration [G] | 0.05-0.50     | Cutter acceleration. If it is too large, the cut line is misaligned or gets crooked. The smaller the acceleration, the higher the accuracy.                                                                                                                                    |
| Cut Speed [mm/s]     | 20-150        | Moving speed of the cutter for cutting. If it is too high, the cut line is misaligned or gets crooked. The slower speed will improve accuracy.                                                                                                                                 |
| Blade Offset [mm]    | 0-0.5         | The distance between the center of the blade holder and the tip of blade. The following problems can be seen if this option is not set properly.<br>- Peeling on corners -> improper value<br>- Corners with flags -> too large<br>- Rounded corner -> too small               |
| Cut Count            | 1-9           | The number of times the blade cuts the same location. It may be effective to increase the number of cuts depending on the thickness or hardness of media.                                                                                                                      |
| Cutting length [mm]  | 0.1-100.0     | (Through-cut only) Length of the area to be cut through.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Spacing [mm]         | 0.1-10.0      | (Through cut only) Length of uncut area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

#### G Important /

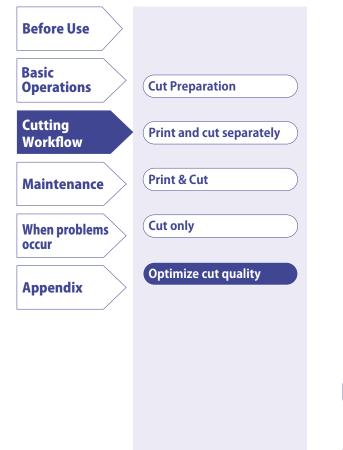
- The faster the "cut speed" and "cut acceleration", the worse the cutting quality. Adjust these settings according to the required cut quality level.
- Even if cutting condition is adjusted, using improper media could shorten the life of cutter or result in damage to the cutter.

The size "Media Size" P.40

| Before Use          |                          | 5 Clic |
|---------------------|--------------------------|--------|
| Basic<br>Operations | Cut Preparation          |        |
| Cutting<br>Workflow | Print and cut separately |        |
| Maintenance         | Print & Cut              |        |
| When problems occur | Cut only                 |        |
| Appendix            | Optimize cut quality     |        |
|                     |                          |        |

#### Click [Save].

| Tool Settings |                |      |                    |      |        | × |
|---------------|----------------|------|--------------------|------|--------|---|
| Cut Co        | ontour         |      |                    |      |        |   |
| ✓ Cut         | t Force        | 80   | ~                  | gf   |        |   |
| ✓ Cut         | t Acceleration | 0.05 | ~ ~                | G    |        |   |
| 🗸 Cut         | t Speed        | 150  | ~                  | mm/s |        |   |
| 🗸 Bla         | de Offset      | 0.15 | $\sim$             | mm   |        |   |
| Cut Co        | unt            | 1    | $\sim$             |      |        |   |
| Cut Th        | rough          |      |                    |      |        | Ì |
| 🗸 Cut         | t Force        | 200  | <u>^</u>           | gf   |        |   |
| ✓ Cut         | t Acceleration | 0.05 | ~                  | G    |        |   |
| 🗸 Cut         | t Speed        | 150  | ~ ~                | mm/s |        |   |
| 🖌 Bla         | de Offset      | 0.15 | ~                  | mm   |        |   |
| Cut Co        | unt            | 1    | $\sim$             |      |        |   |
| Cutting       | ) length       | 10   | $\hat{\mathbf{v}}$ | mm   |        |   |
| Spacin        | g              | 0.1  | ~                  | mm   |        |   |
|               |                |      |                    |      |        |   |
|               |                |      |                    |      |        | _ |
|               |                |      | Save               |      | Cancel |   |



## Cut quality of curves

Cutting conditions for curved line can be selected from the following three modes. Select an appropriate one

according to the sharpness and amount of curved lines contained in the cut data or required quality level.

| Quality    | Select this for cut data with many sharp curves and when you want to prioritize curve cutting quality over the speed. |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Production | Select this for cut data with many gentle curves and when you want to balance between cutting quality and speed.      |
| High Speed | Select this for cut data consisting of mostly straight lines or when you prioritize the speed over cutting quality.   |

#### 🛄 Note

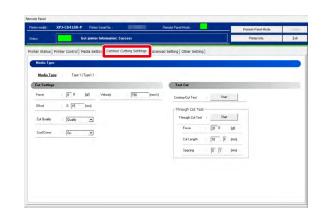
There may be no difference in overall cutting speed depending on the sharpness or amount of curves included in cut data.

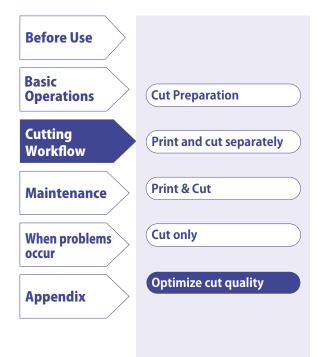
## Procedure

Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel" P.28



Click the [Contour Cuting Setting] tab.





3 Select the cutting mode from Quality, Production or High Speed in [Cut Quality].

Click [Update].

• The change made is saved in the machine.

4

 Mendel held
 Start Model
 Remote Paul Holds
 Remote Paul Holds
 Update

 Statu
 Get palates Indexendones: Soccess
 Print Hold
 Update

 Printer Statual, Printer Control, Media Setting
 Advanced Setting
 Other Setting
 Printer Setting

 Mode Later
 I get 1 (get 1)
 Image Setting
 Other Setting
 Printer Status

 Foreirs
 I get 1 (get 1)
 Image Setting
 Defended

 Get Setting
 Velocity
 1000
 Image Setting
 Defended

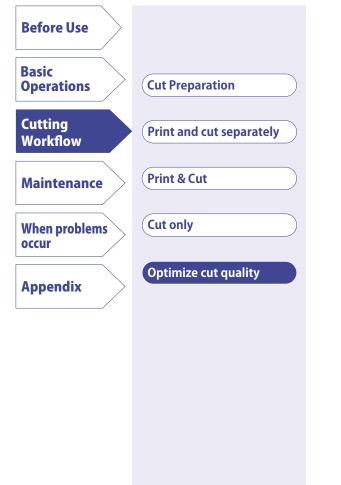
 Get Setting
 Other Get Test
 Defended
 Image Setting
 Defended

 Get Colorent
 Image Setting
 Velocity
 1000
 Image Setting
 Defended

 Get Colorent
 Image Setting
 Velocity
 1000
 Image Setting
 Defended

 Get Colorent
 Image Setting
 Image Setting
 Image Setting
 Image Setting
 Image Setting

|              |                     |                           |                    |            | ste Panel Mode :    |      |       | -    | Remote Panel Mode |   | Upd |
|--------------|---------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|------------|---------------------|------|-------|------|-------------------|---|-----|
| ohus:        | Ge                  | et printer Information: 1 | Succese            |            |                     |      |       |      | Printer Info.     | L | E   |
| inter Status | Printer Control   A | fedia Setting Contor      | r Cutting Settings | Advanced S | atting Other Settin | al   |       | _    |                   |   |     |
|              |                     | icon occury               |                    | 101010000  | tong   outer octain | 9 I  |       |      |                   |   |     |
| Media Typ    | •                   |                           |                    |            |                     |      |       |      |                   |   |     |
| Media Ts     | epe : Type 11       | Type1 1                   |                    |            |                     |      |       |      |                   |   |     |
| Cut Sotting  | μ                   |                           |                    |            | Tost Cut            |      |       |      |                   |   |     |
| Force        | 15 0                | [gf] Velocity             | 150                | [mm/s]     | Contour-Cut Test    |      | Start |      |                   |   |     |
| Offeet       | : 0. 00             | [mm]                      |                    |            | -Through Cut Tes    |      |       |      |                   |   |     |
| Cut Quality  | Quality             | •                         |                    |            | Through Cut Test    |      | Start |      |                   |   |     |
| Cool Down    | : 0#                | •                         |                    |            | Force               | : 2  | 0     | lø1  |                   |   |     |
|              | ,                   |                           |                    |            | Cut Length          | : 11 | 1.0   | [mn] |                   |   |     |
|              |                     |                           |                    |            | Interval            | : 0  | 1     | [mm] |                   |   |     |
|              |                     |                           |                    |            |                     |      |       |      |                   |   |     |
|              |                     |                           |                    |            |                     |      |       |      |                   |   |     |
|              |                     |                           |                    |            |                     |      |       |      |                   |   |     |
|              |                     |                           |                    |            |                     |      |       |      |                   |   |     |
|              |                     |                           |                    |            |                     |      |       |      |                   |   |     |



# Cut scale adjustment

Calibrate the cutting distance in the carriage moving direction. This calibration should be performed when the following symptom appears:

• The cut position and print position do not match on the non-origin side.

## Procedure

## 1. Initial Adjustment



Load media into the machine. "Loading media into the machine" P.52

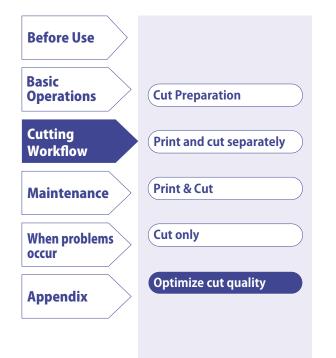


3

Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel" P.28



| termodel: >      | PJ-C6415R-P   | Printer St    |                                |                   | , nem   | ote Panel Mode :                        |               | Remote Pan         | el Mode | Upd     |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------|---------|
| #                | 6             | st printer Ir | formation: Suc                 | ess               |         |                                         |               | Printer In         | do.     | Ext     |
| ter Status   Pri | nter Contre M | adia Settin   | g iontour Cut                  | ting Settings Adv | anced S | etting Other Setting                    | Plug Lifetime |                    |         |         |
| Media Type       |               |               |                                |                   |         |                                         |               |                    |         |         |
| Media Type       |               |               |                                |                   |         |                                         |               |                    |         |         |
| Media Type       | : Type1[T     | ypel          | <ul> <li>Initializa</li> </ul> | ion :             | Start   |                                         |               |                    |         |         |
| Media Settin     | a             |               |                                |                   |         | Adjust                                  |               |                    |         |         |
| Print Mode       | : High Qualit |               | Effect                         | : ScieenFinel.    | •       | Adjust Print :                          | Start         | Adjust Print(Auto) |         | Start   |
| Vacuum Fan       | : 0#          | ٣             | Heater                         | : 🔽 🔟             | 10      | PF Adjust                               | Start         | PF Adjust(Auto)    |         | Start   |
| Side Margin      | : 25          | (mm)          | Media Initial                  | Width             | ٠       |                                         |               |                    |         |         |
|                  |               |               |                                |                   |         | Adjust Contour Cut                      |               |                    |         |         |
|                  |               |               |                                |                   |         | Print                                   | : Start       |                    |         |         |
| Origin           | : 0#          | -             |                                |                   |         | Setup(PF)                               | + • 0 .0 m    | Setup(CR)          |         | 0 .0 (m |
| Media Inform     | nation        |               |                                |                   |         | Adjust Cut Scale                        |               |                    |         |         |
| Width            | : 407         | (mm)          | Thickness                      | 170               | (um)    | 1. Initial Adjust<br>1-1. Pattern Print | : 500         | 💌 (mm)             | Stat    |         |
| Media Type C     |               |               | _                              |                   |         | 1-2. Initial Change                     | : 0           | . [0] (mm)         | Stat    | 1       |
| Copy from        |               | Copy to       |                                |                   |         | 2. Confirm Adjust<br>2-1. Pattern Print | : 500         | 👻 (mm)             | Stat    |         |



From [Adjust Cut Scale] > [1. Initial Adjust] > [1-1. Pattern Print], enter the width (mm) of the pattern to be printed and click [Start].

• The pattern printing and cutting with the specified width begins.

| ter model : | XPJ-C641SR-P Pinte        | er Sorial No. :                    | Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode                    | Update  |
|-------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| las.        | Get printer               | Information: Success               | Printer Info.                                            | Exit    |
| ter Status  | Printer Control Media Set | tting Contour Cutting Settings Adv | anced Setting Other Setting                              |         |
| Media Typ   |                           | 1                                  |                                                          |         |
|             |                           |                                    |                                                          |         |
| Media Is    | DE : Type1(Type1)         | <ul> <li>Inhalization</li> </ul>   | Add Media : Start                                        |         |
| Hedia Se    | stting                    |                                    | Adjust                                                   |         |
| Print Mode  |                           | Effect : Finel/Fog                 | Adjust Print : Start Adjust Print[Auto] : S              | itart   |
| Vacuum Fa   | n : High 💌                | Heater : 😿 45                      | CI PF Adjust : Start PF Adjust(Auto) : S                 | itart   |
| Side Margin | . : 15 [mm]               | Media Initial : Width              | •                                                        |         |
|             |                           |                                    | Adjust Contour Cutting Position                          |         |
|             |                           |                                    | Plint : Start                                            |         |
| Nodia In    | formation                 |                                    | Setup(PF) : + • 0 .0 (mm) Setup(CR) : + • 0              | [mm] 0. |
| Width       | : [51] [mm]               | Thickness : 280                    | Adjust Cut Scale                                         | _       |
|             |                           |                                    | 1. Intel Adjust<br>1.1. Pattern Pint : [500 • [nm] Start | 1       |
| Media Iy    | pe Copy                   |                                    | 1.2. Initial Change : 0 .0 (mm) Start                    | Ĩ       |
| Copy from   | (Type1)                   |                                    | 2. Contine Adjust                                        | -       |
| 19pe 1      | (ijpai) 🔛                 | - Start                            | 21. Pattern Plint : 600 v [nm] Start                     |         |

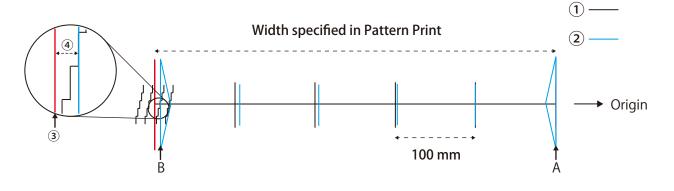
Using the stepped scale lines printed on the left side of the pattern, measure the distance (④) between the reference line (③) and the cut line (B). (Width of stepped scale line: One step = 0.1 mm)

- Print line:  $\bigcirc$ 

5

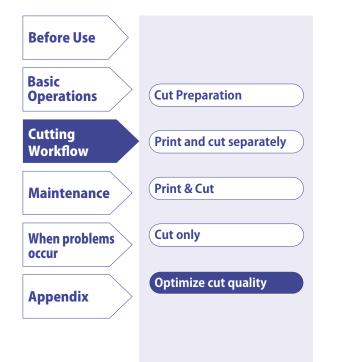
- Cut line: 2

(In this illustration, the reference line is shown in red, but it will be printed in black.)



#### 📢 Important !

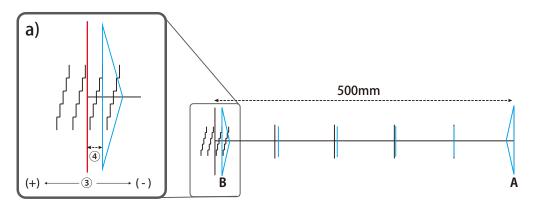
If the printed line and cut line do not align on the origin side (A), go to "Adjust the contour cutting position" P.130 to adjust contour cutting position.



6 The Initial Change value is calculated as [width (mm) of pattern] + [distance between the reference line and cut line ( ④ = the number of vertical lines in the scale lines x 0.1 mm)].

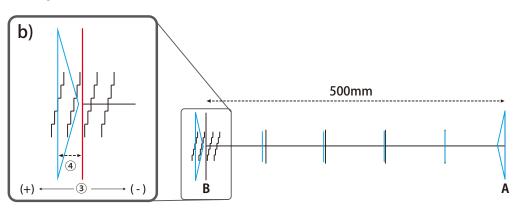
Example a) If the width of the pattern is set to 500 mm and the cut line was off from the reference line by five vertical lines of the scale lines to the origin side:

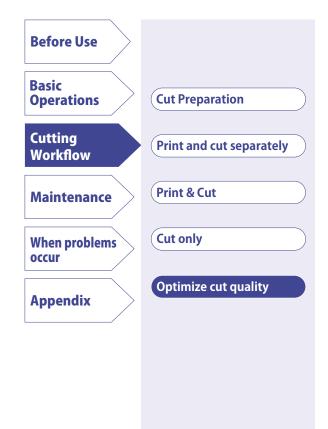
 $(4) = 5 \times 0.1 \text{ mm} = -0.5 \text{ mm}$ Initial Change value = 500 mm - 0.5 mm = 499.5 mm



Example b) If the width of the pattern is set to 500 mm and the cut line was off from the reference line by eight vertical lines of the scale lines to the non-origin side:

 $(4) = 8 \times 0.1 \text{ mm} = 0.8 \text{ mm}$ Initial Change value = 500 mm + 0.8 mm = 500.8 mm







Enter the Initial Change value (mm) in [1-2. Initial Change] and click [Start].

- The initial change value is saved in the machine.
- Next, move to "2. Confirm Adjustment" P.160

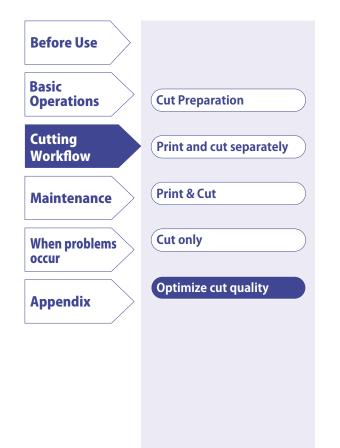
## 2. Confirm Adjustment

From [Adjust Cut Scale] > [2. Confirm Adjust] > [2-1. Pattern Print], enter the width (mm) of the pattern to be printed and click [Start].

• The pattern printing and cutting with the specified width begins.

| er model : XPJ-C641SR-P Pinter Se           | ral No. : He                      | emote Panel Mode :                                              | Remote Panel Mode    | Update   |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------|
| a: Get printer Info                         | rmation: Success                  |                                                                 | Ptinter Info.        | Exit     |
| er Status   Printer Control   Media Setting | Contour Cutting Settings Advanced | Setting Other Setting                                           |                      |          |
|                                             |                                   |                                                                 |                      |          |
| Media Type                                  |                                   |                                                                 |                      |          |
| Media Type : Type 1 (Type 1)                | Initialization : Start            | Add Modia :                                                     | Start                |          |
| Media Setting                               |                                   | Adjust                                                          |                      |          |
| Print Mode :                                | Effect : FinebFog 💌               | Adjust Print : Start                                            | Adjust Print(Auto) : | Stat     |
| Vacuum Fan : High 💌                         | Heater : 😿 45 [C]                 | PF Adjust : Start                                               | PE Adjust(Auto) :    | Stat     |
| Side Margin : 15 [mm]                       | Media Initial : Width             |                                                                 |                      |          |
|                                             |                                   | Adjust Contour Cutting Position                                 | 1                    |          |
|                                             |                                   |                                                                 |                      |          |
| Media Information                           |                                   | Setup(PF) : + • 0 ,0 (mm)                                       | Setup(CR) : + •      | 0 0 (mn) |
| Widh : [811 [ma]                            | Thickness : [280 [um]             | Adjust Cut Scale<br>1. Inisia Adjust<br>1-1. Pattern Part : 500 | Iveal Start          |          |
| Media Type Copy                             |                                   |                                                                 | i feed               | •        |
| Copy from Copy to                           |                                   |                                                                 | 0 [mm] Start         |          |
| Type I (TypeI )                             | Stat                              | 2. Confirm Adjust<br>2-1. Pattern Pant : 500                    | [mm] Start           |          |

| Rer model :          |             | -C641SR-P Pinter Setal No. : Renote Panel Mode : |                                |             |      |                                                               |                           | Remote Panel       | Mode   | Updal |
|----------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|--------|-------|
|                      |             | et printer Inf                                   | emation: Succ                  | ***         |      |                                                               |                           | Printer Inf        | D.     | Exit  |
| Media Typ            | e           |                                                  |                                |             |      | tting   Other Setti                                           | Ing                       |                    |        |       |
| Media Ty<br>Media Se |             | (Tapet )                                         | <ul> <li>Initializa</li> </ul> | tion :      | Slat | Add Modia                                                     | -                         | Start              |        |       |
| Print Mode           | _           |                                                  | Effect                         | -           | _    | Adjust Print                                                  | : Start                   | Adust Print/Auto)  |        | lat   |
| Phil Mode            | 1           | ٠                                                | Fliet                          | : Finel/Fog | *    | Adjust Print                                                  | : 5144                    | Adjust Phintphusoj |        | -tak  |
| Vacuum Fa            | n : High    |                                                  | Heater                         | : 🔽 45      | (C)  | PF Adjust                                                     | : Start                   | PF Adjust(Auto)    | 1      | itat  |
| Side Margin          | : 15        | [mn]                                             | Media Initial                  | : Width     |      |                                                               |                           |                    |        |       |
|                      |             |                                                  |                                |             |      | Adjust Contour C<br>Print                                     | utting Position<br>: Stat |                    |        |       |
| Media In             | feenation   |                                                  |                                |             |      | Setup(PF)                                                     | : • • 0 .0 m              | m] Setup(CR)       | : + •0 | [mn]  |
| Width                | : 611       | [mn]                                             | Thickness                      | : 200       | [un] | Adjust Cut Scale<br>1. Initial Adjust<br>1-1. Pattern Phri    | : 500                     | - [10]             | Start  | 1     |
| Nedia Typ            | e Copy      |                                                  |                                |             |      | 1-2. Initial Charus                                           | 1                         |                    | Stat   |       |
| Copy from            |             | Copy to                                          |                                |             |      |                                                               | <i>n</i> : 0              | 0 [mm]             | oval   |       |
| Type 1               | (Typel) 🕨 🕨 |                                                  |                                | Start       |      | <ol> <li>Confirm Adjust</li> <li>2-1. Pattern Pari</li> </ol> | : 500                     | ▼ [mn]             | Start  |       |



#### Examine the pattern and check if the print line ( 1 ) and cut line ( 2 ) are aligned.

• Print line: ① \*

2

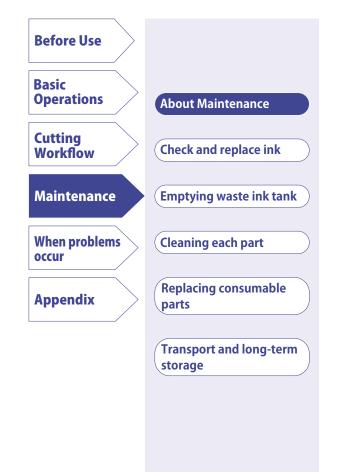
• Cut line: ②

(\*For Confirm Adjust pattern, the pattern is printed in Magenta.)



3 If misaligned, go to "1. Initial Adjustment" P.157 to calibrate again.





# **About Maintenance**

To maintain the performance of this product, please conduct maintenance by yourself. The types of maintenance are shown here.

| Before daily operation             | P.58                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When needed                        | Replacing with a new ink cartridge" P.167                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                    | The second secon |
|                                    | Thead cleaning" P.175                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                    | 🐨 "Soak Cleaning" P.178                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                    | The second the cap unit P.190                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                    | The sensor of th |
|                                    | The second secon |
|                                    | The second secon |
|                                    | Treplacing the flushing box pad" P.200                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                    | The placing the blade for sheet cutter" P.203                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                    | The second secon |
|                                    | Treplacing the cutting mat" P.209                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                    | Treplacing the blade for contour cutter" P.211                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Once a month                       | The aning the parts around the print head" P.185                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                    | The second secon |
| When not used for more than 1 week | Once a week 🞯 "Head cleaning" P.175                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

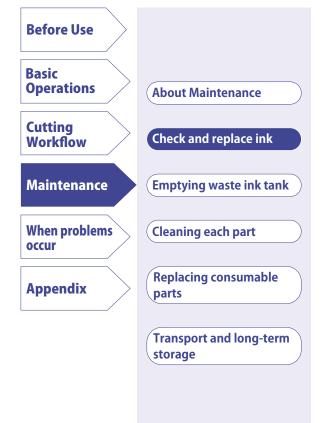


### G Important/

In following cases, please contact your local MUTOH dealer to request service personnel.

• A system error occurred repeatedly.

- A message that notifies life expectancy of various motors, pumps, or print heads were displayed.
- (Were the states and Error Messages" P.228



# **Check and replace ink**

# Check the ink level

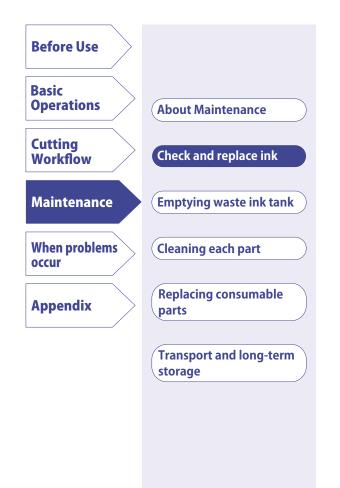
Start MSM and open the remote panel.



Go to the Printer Status tab > Ink Information and check the ink level.

• As ink is used, the colored scale decreases.

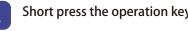




## When an ink is nearing replacement

When the ink level becomes low, the error LED on the control panel blinks with beep sound.

#### **Steps**



Short press the operation key on the control panel.

• The beep stops.

#### 🛄 Note

While in sleep mode, the sleep mode continues even after beep stopped.

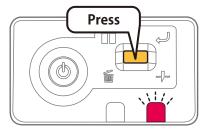
Start MSM and open the remote panel. **"Displaying remote panel" P.28** 

3

2

#### Check the ink cartridge that is nearing the replacement.

• Check [Status Information]. For example, if "Ink End : No. 2 4" is displayed, you need to replace the ink cartridges in the slots 2 and 4.



|                             |                                         | Remote Panel Mode :               |                | Renote Panel Mo | de Updat     |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| vuz 🚺                       | Bet printer Information: Success        |                                   |                | Printer Info.   | Exit         |
| nter Status Printer Control | Media Setting   Contour Cutting Setting | as Advanced Setting Other Setting | 1              |                 |              |
| Status Information          |                                         |                                   | hinter Control |                 |              |
| Auto Printer Information    | Interval : 60 💌 (cec)                   | Statue Dely                       |                | -               |              |
| Date(YYYY-NH-DD-HH:NH)      | Contents                                |                                   |                |                 | 88-88        |
| 2024-10-14 11:54            | Ink End No. : 1                         |                                   |                | - <u>~</u> =    |              |
|                             |                                         |                                   | W              |                 | /            |
|                             |                                         |                                   |                |                 |              |
|                             |                                         |                                   | Print Cancel   | Media Cut       | Nozzle Check |
| Heater Information          |                                         |                                   | ileep Mode     |                 |              |
| Heater Set :                |                                         | E                                 | inter          | Stat            |              |
| IZ 30 [C]                   |                                         | -                                 | Jeaning Timer  | 3 [5]           |              |
| Temperature :               | Warm Up Cancel                          | Stat                              |                |                 |              |
| Pre : 30 (¢)                | 86 (F)                                  |                                   | Jeaning Type   | Flushing -      |              |
| Platen : 30 ICI             | 86 IFI Cool Down Cancel                 | Stat                              |                |                 |              |
| Ink Information             |                                         |                                   | Vaste Ink      |                 |              |
| 1 2                         | 3 1                                     |                                   |                |                 |              |
| 100 T                       |                                         | ,                                 | ют Г           |                 |              |
|                             |                                         |                                   |                |                 | FULL         |
| 50                          |                                         |                                   | 50 +           | -               |              |
|                             |                                         |                                   |                |                 | 0            |
|                             |                                         |                                   |                |                 | et Waste Isk |





## Replacing with a new ink cartridge

When an ink cartridge runs out of ink, the error LED blinks with beep sound and printing pauses. Replacing with the new cartridge will resume printing.





Keep ink cartridge away from fire or heat source to avoid risk of fire.

## Caution

- Be careful not to get ink in your eyes or on skin. Wear protective gloves.
- If in eyes or on skin, immediately flush with water. If left untreated, it could result in bloodshot eyes or mild inflammation. If abnormality persists, seek medical advice immediately.

## G Important/

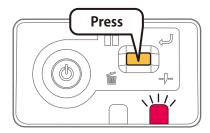
- Do not replace ink cartridge when the printer is powered off. Ink level cannot be detected correctly.
- When moving an ink cartridge from cold place to warm place, rest it in room temperature at least 3 hours before use.

## When using ink cartridges



#### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

• The beep stops.







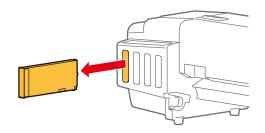
Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel P.28

#### Confirm which ink cartridge you need to replace.

• Check [Status Information]. In this example, "Ink End : No.1" is displayed, so you will need to replace the ink cartridge in the slot 1.



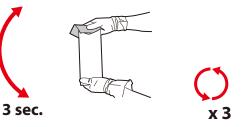
#### Remove the empty ink cartridge.



# Prepare a new ink cartridge and follow these steps to agitate ink.

- 1. Hold the ink cartridge with the ink outlet facing up and count for three seconds.
- **2.** Invert it so that the ink outlet faces down and count for three seconds.
- **3.** Repeat this three times.







#### 6 Insert a new ink cartridge.

- Match the color of the ink cartridge with the color of the label attached to the ink slot.
- Face the arrow mark upward.
- Insert it all the way in.

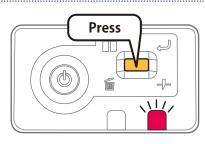
## 🛄 Note

While in sleep mode, the sleep mode continues even after beep stopped.

## When using ink bags with high-capacity ink pack adapters

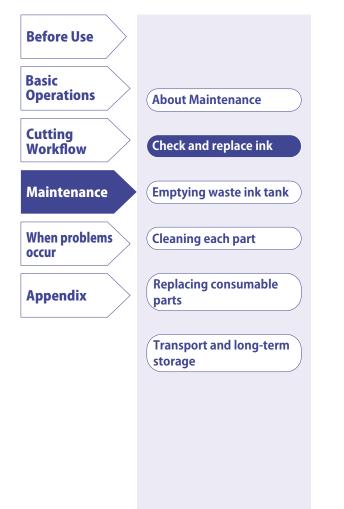


- Short press the operation key on the control panel.
- The beep stops.





Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel P.28





5

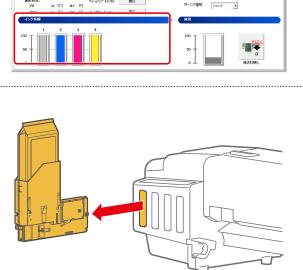
# In [Ink Information], check the ink bag you will replace.

• Also check [Status Information]. In this example, "Ink End : No. 1" is displayed, so you will need to replace the ink bag in the slot 1.

Remove the high-capacity ink pack adapter of the ink bag you will replace.

#### G Important #

Do not remove the ink bag without removing the high-capacity ink pack adapter from the machine. The ink level information will be rewritten and those smartchip card and ink bag will no longer be available.



77-227917-

3 (14(2))

明朝 メディア設定 カット設定 詳細設定 その危設定

自動2722/14480/9

日時(年-月-日-時;分)

しーター情報 時定温度:

F 30

#### Take a new ink bag out of its packaging.

#### 📢 Important ‼

Open the packaging of the ink bag immediately prior to installing to the high-capacity ink pack adapter. Leaving it open for a long time could prevent normal printing.



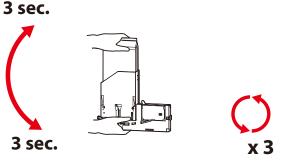
Insert the ink bag and a smartchip card to the high-capacity ink pack adapter.

## **Note**

For insertion and removal procedure, see the operation manual supplied with the high-capacity ink pack adapter.

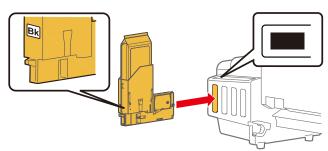
#### Follow these steps to agitate ink.

- 1. Hold the ink bag with the high-capacity ink pack adapter from the top and bottom so that the ink bag is not removed. Face the ink outlet up and count for three seconds.
- **2.** Invert it so that the ink outlet faces down and count for three seconds.
- 3. Repeat this three times.



#### Insert the high-capacity ink pack adapter into the slot.

- Match the color of the high-capacity ink pack adapter with the color of the label attached to the ink slot.
- Insert it all the way in.



### 🛄 Note

While in sleep mode, the sleep mode continues even after beep stopped.



# **Emptying waste ink tank**

When the certain amount of ink is used on the machine, the error LED on the control panel turns on with beep sound. Drain the waste ink into a container like PET bottle to empty the tank.

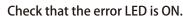
## Caution

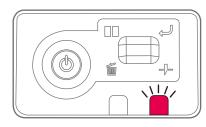
- - Be careful not to get ink in your eyes or on skin. Wear protective gloves.
  - If in eyes or on skin, immediately flush with water. If left untreated, it could result in bloodshot eyes or mild inflammation. If abnormality persists, seek medical advice immediately.

## ( Important/

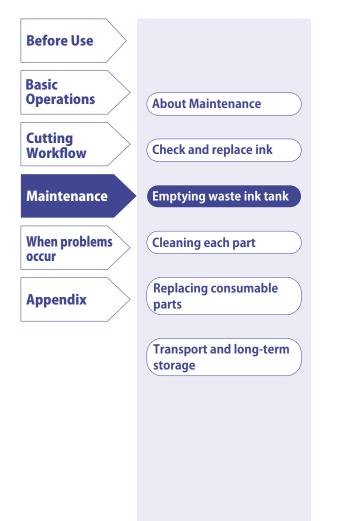
When moving this product, empty the waste ink tank even if it is short distance. If ink splashes inside the waste ink tank while being moved, it will cause damage to the product.

## **Steps**





Start MSM and open the remote panel. **"Displaying remote panel" P.28** 





Check [Status Information] in the Printer Status tab.

• The waste ink tank full message is displayed.



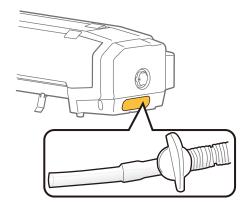
4 Prepare a container like PET bottle to drain waste ink.

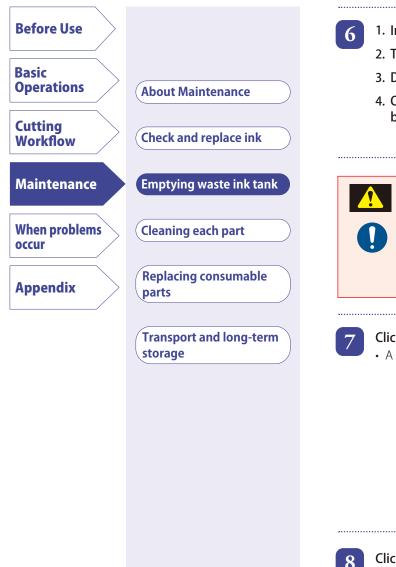
#### G Important/

The capacity of waste ink tank is 1,400 ml. Make sure to prepare a container that has enough capacity.



Pull out the tip of the drain tube.





- 1. Insert the tip of drain tube into the container.
- 2. Turn the valve as shown in the illustration.
- 3. Drain waste ink into the container.
- 4. Once you finish emptying the tank, turn the valve back in place.

## Warning.



Waste fluids collected from the machine are classified as an industrial waste product. You are obligated to properly dispose of waste fluid in compliance with Wastes Disposal and Public Cleansing Act and local ordinances.

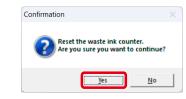
Delegate disposal to an industrial waste disposal contractor.

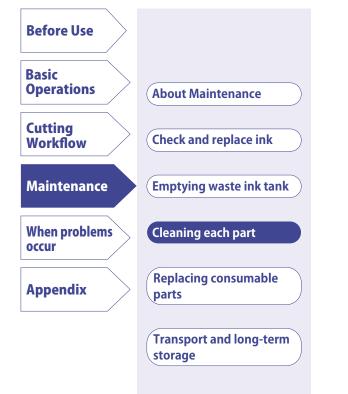
## Click [Reset Waste Ink].

• A confirmation message appears.









# **Cleaning each part**

## Head cleaning

If there are missing lines in the nozzle check print, perform a head cleaning.

It consumes some ink.

The following cleaning modes are available in this product. Select an appropriate mode depending on the result of nozzle check print.

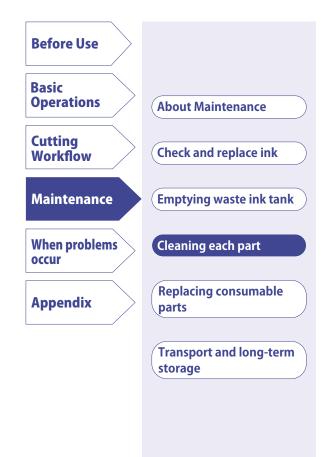
| Short cleaning   | Consumes less ink than "Normal" cleaning.                                                                                                       |  |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Normal cleaning  | Select this mode if there are several missing lines in the nozzle check print.                                                                  |  |
| Long cleaning    | Consumes more ink than "Normal" cleaning. Perform "Long" cleaning if nozzle<br>clogging<br>persists even after "Normal" cleaning was performed. |  |
| Little Charge    | Gives higher cleaning, but consumes large amount of ink.                                                                                        |  |
| [Initial Charge] | Gives higher cleaning than [Little Charge], but consumes quite large amount of ink.                                                             |  |

### G Important/

When performing a "Little Charge", please comply with the following.

If cleaning is interrupted, it may consume more ink.

- Do not turn off the machine.
- Do not disconnect the power cord.
- Do not open the front cover.
- Do not remove ink cartridges.
- Do not use an ink cartridge with less ink.



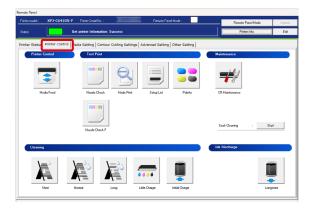
## Head Cleaning steps

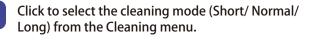
1

3

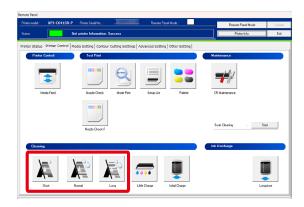
Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel" P.28

- 2 Click the Printer Control tab.
  - The Printer Control tab page opens.





• The cleaning cycle begins.





## Run a nozzle check print.

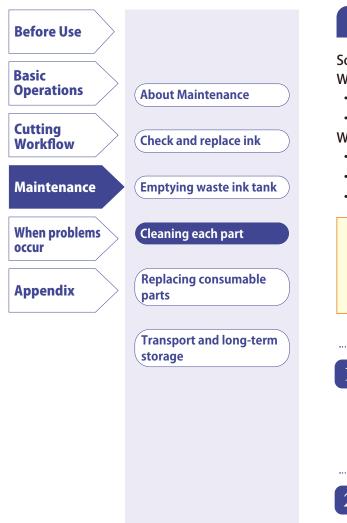
• If the problem persists, repeat cleaning and nozzle check.

The ad Cleaning steps" P.176

## **Note**

#### If missing lines persists after several attempts of "Normal" cleaning, try following the below steps:

- 1. Perform the "Long" cleaning (If the problem persists, go to the next step).
- 2. Perform the following cleaning (If the problem persists, go to the next step).
  - **W** "Cleaning the parts around the print head" P.185
  - **W** "Cleaning the cleaning wiper" P.188
- **3.** Go to Maintenance menu > Cleaning menu and perform "Little Charge" cleaning (If the problem persists, go to the next step).
  - The interview of the image of t
- 4. If nozzle still clogs, you can select the nozzles that do not suffer from clogging to continue printing from the Nozzle Area Select menu in the Advance Setting tab in MSM.



# Soak Cleaning

Soak the print head in the maintenance cleaner filled in the head cap to clean dirt on the surface of nozzle. When to clean:

- once a week(recommended)
- nozzle clogging or nozzle deflection persists after cleaning attempt.

What you need:

- Designated maintenance cleaner
- Paper towel (or Polyknit wipe)
- Plastic cup\*, Dropper\*, Polyethylene gloves\*, Goggles\* (\*commercially available)



## Caution

Be careful not to get ink in your eyes or on skin. Wear protective gloves. If in eyes or on skin, immediately flush with water. If left untreated, it could result in bloodshot eyes or mild inflammation. If abnormality persists, seek medical advice immediately.

#### Prepare for cleaning.

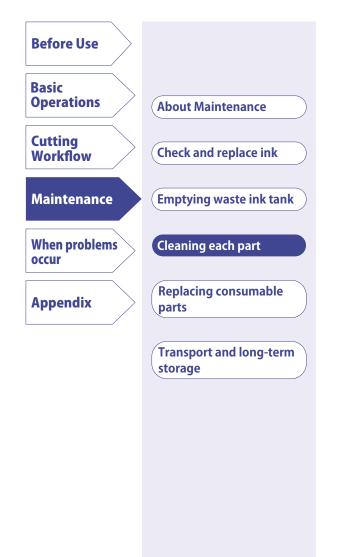
- Wear gloves and goggles.
- Pour an appropriate amount of maintenance cleaner into the plastic cup.



| Q |   |
|---|---|
| Å |   |
|   | Æ |
|   |   |

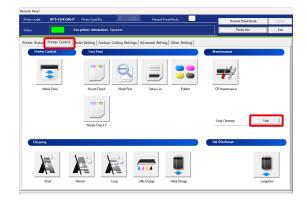


Start MSM and open the remote panel. Tisplaying remote panel" P.28



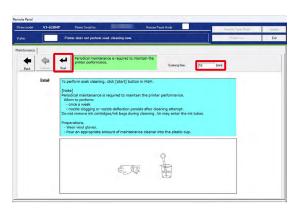


Click [Soak Cleaning] in the Printer Control tab.



## Set a soaking time and click [Start].

• 10 minutes is recommended for soak cleaning time.

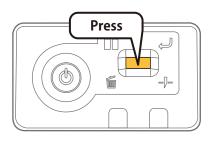


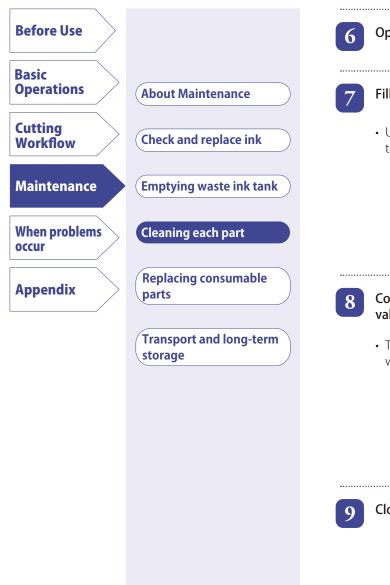


4

#### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

• The carriage moves to the maintenance position (left side of the printer)



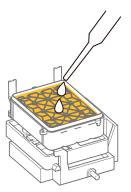




#### Open the front cover.

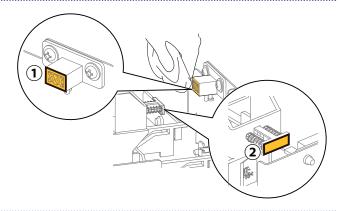
#### Fill the head cap with maintenance cleaner.

• Use a dropper to fill it with maintenance cleaner until the cleaner almost overflows the cap.



#### Completely wipe off any ink on the surface of the air valve (parts 1) and 2).

• The standard maintenance time for Step 7 and Step 8 is within 5 minutes.



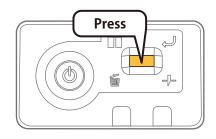
#### Close the front cover.





#### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

- The carriage goes back in place to cap the print head.
- The countdown begins.



### When the timer reaches 0, the cleaning begins automatically.

### G Important !!

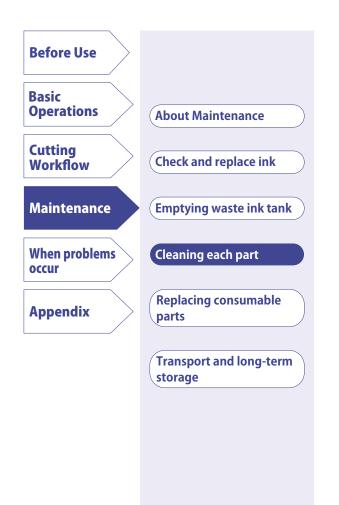
Do not remove the ink cartridge during cleaning. Air may enter the ink line.

### 12 End the soak cleaning.

- Clean off the maintenance cleaner from the dropper with the paper towel.
- Dispose of the maintenance cleaner in the plastic cup and clean off the cup with the paper towel.
- Close the maintenance cleaner bottle tightly and store it.

### G Important #

- Used paper towel and the maintenance cleaner left in the plastic cup are industrial waste. Dispose of them in accordance with the local regulations.
- If the jetting failure persists after several soak cleaning attempt, please contact your local MUTOH dealer.



### **Cleaning each part of the machine**

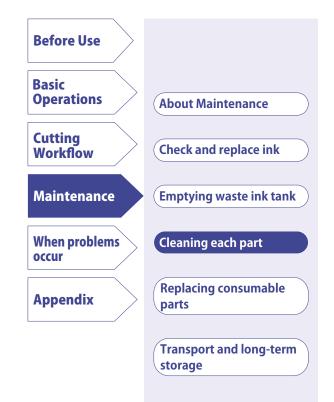
To keep the product in good condition all the time, please clean each part of the machine regularly or when required. When cleaning the parts marked with asterisk mark (\*), you will need to put the machine in the CR maintenance mode.

**Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode P.183** 

### Caution

- Be careful not to get ink in your eyes or on skin. Wear protective gloves.
- If in eyes or on skin, immediately flush with water. If left untreated, it could result in bloodshot eyes or mild inflammation. If abnormality persists, seek medical advice immediately.

| Parts need to be cleaned     | When to clean                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Parts around the print head* | <ul> <li>lines are blurred or image is partially not printed even after head cleaning was performed</li> <li>ink smudge appears.</li> <li>Cleaning the parts around the print head" P.185</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| Cleaning wiper*              | Lines are blurred or image is partially not printed even after head cleaning was<br>performed<br><b>Cleaning the cleaning wiper</b> " P.188                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |
| Parts around the cap unit*   | Once a week.          Image: Second system       Image: Second system         Image: Second system       Image: Second system |  |
| Color sensor*                | <ul> <li>Repeatedly failed to perform automatic print quality calibration</li> <li>Repeatedly failed to read crop mark</li> <li>Cleaning of color sensor" P.192</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| Blade holder                 | Dust or small pieces of media are accumulated in the blade holder.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  |
| Blade for contour cutter     | Dirt like oil appears on the cut line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |
| Inside the machine           | <ul> <li>Once a month</li> <li>You see ink dirt or dust on the machine.</li> <li>Cleaning inside the machine" P.197</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |

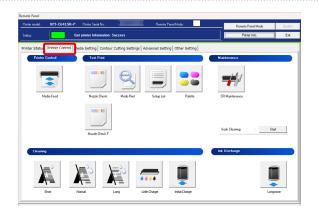


### Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode

Start MSM and open the remote panel. Taunching/ Opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



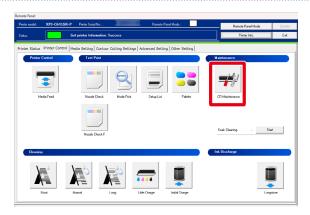
- The Printer Control tab page opens.

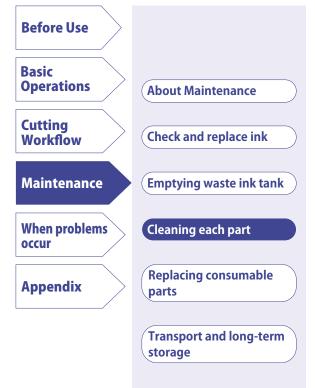




2

- Click [CR Maintenance] in the Maintenance menu.
  - The CR Maintenance page appears.





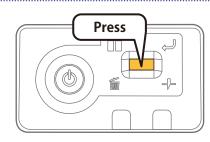


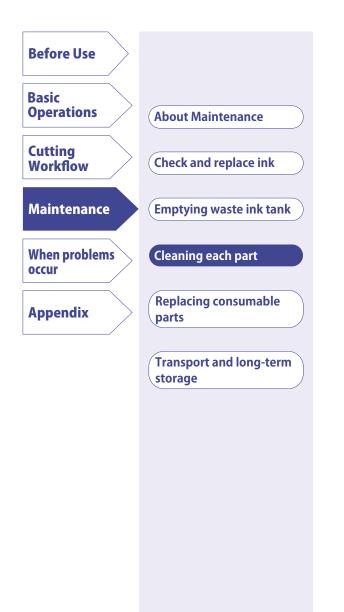




### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

• The carriage moves to the maintenance position.





### Cleaning the parts around the print head

#### When to clean:

- Once a week
- · lines are blurred or image is partially not printed even after head cleaning was performed

#### What you need:

Cleaning stick

### G Important !!

Make sure to follow the instructions below during cleaning:

- Use a dry cleaning stick. Using a wet cleaning stick could cause damage to the print head.
- Do not touch the tip of the cleaning stick. If finger print oil gets on the stick, it will damage the print head.
- Do not reuse cleaning sticks. This will cause dust to adhere, leading to malfunction.
- The standard maintenance time is within 5 minutes. If it takes longer, the print head will get dried, causing the damage.

### **Cleaning steps**

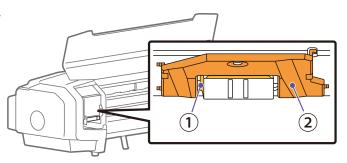
Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode.

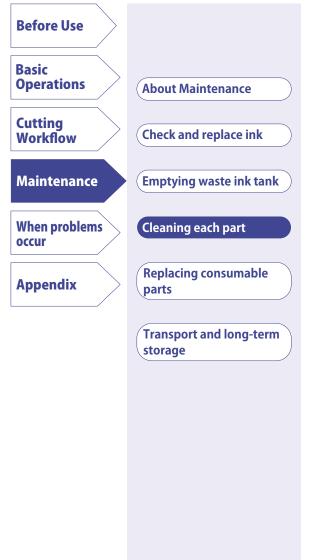
**Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode P.183** 

### Open the front cover.

Check the bottom side of the carriage to see if dust or 3 ink is accumulated on the following parts:

- ①:Parts around the print head
- ②: Head guide





### If dust or ink is accumulated, use a cleaning stick to clean the following parts:

- ③ : Left side of the parts around the print head
- ④:Left side of the head guide

### 📢 Important ‼

- Do not touch the surface of print head (⑤) with finger or cleaning stick. This will cause damage to the print head.
- Do not touch the platen or media guide. It may be hot.

Close the front cover once.



5

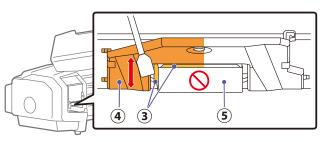
4

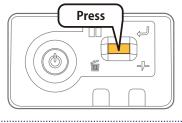
Next clean the right side of the parts around the print head. Short press the operation key on the control panel.

• Inside the front cover, the carriage will move to the maintenance position on the origin side.



Open the front cover.







### Use the cleaning stick to clean the following parts:

- ①: Right side of the parts around the print head
- ②:Right side of the head guide

### 📢 Important ‼

- Do not touch the surface of print head (③) with finger or cleaning stick. This will cause damage to the print head.
- Do not touch the platen or media guide. It may be hot.

Close the front cover.

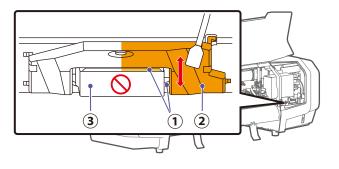


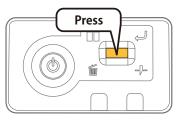
0

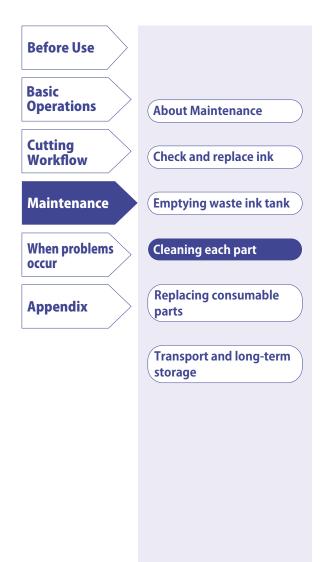
8

#### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

• Inside the front cover, the carriage will move back in place.







### **Cleaning the cleaning wiper**

#### When to clean:

- Once a week
- lines are blurred or image is partially not printed even after head cleaning was performed

#### What you need:

Cleaning stick

### G Important/

Make sure to follow the instructions below:

- Do not touch the cleaning wiper and head cap unit with your hand. If finger print oil gets on these parts, it will prevent normal cleaning.
- Use a dry cleaning stick. Using a wet cleaning stick could cause damage to the print head.
- Do not reuse cleaning sticks. This will cause dust to adhere, leading to malfunction.
- The standard maintenance time is within 5 minutes. If it takes longer, the print head will get dried, causing the damage.

### **Cleaning steps**

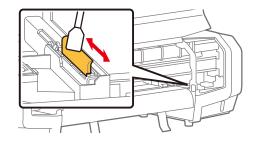
### Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode.

### Open the front cover.



#### Use the cleaning stick to wipe off the cleaning wiper.

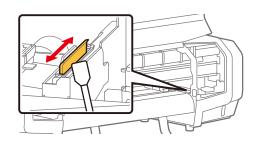
• Wipe off the left side of the wiper back and forth.





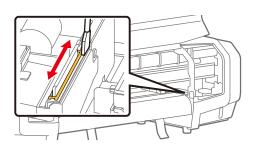


Wipe off the right side of the wiper back and forth.





Wipe off the base of the right side of the wiper back and forth.

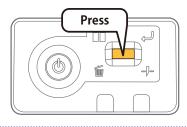


Close the front cover.



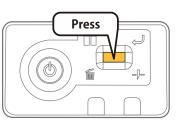
### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

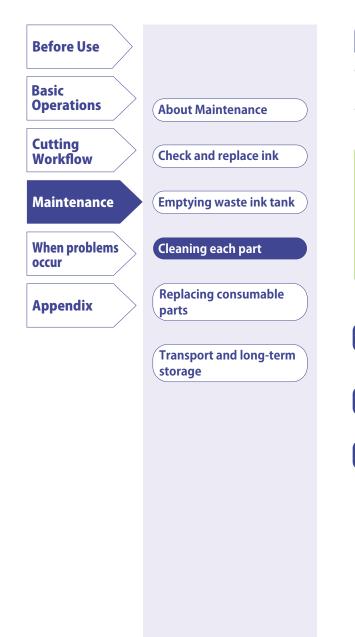
• Inside the front cover, the carriage will move to the maintenance position on the origin side.



Once the carriage has moved to the maintenance position on the origin side, short press the operation key again.

• Inside the front cover, the carriage will move back in place.





### Cleaning the parts around the cap unit

#### When to clean:

- Once a week
- What you need:
- Cleaning stick

### G Important #

Make sure to follow the instructions below during cleaning:

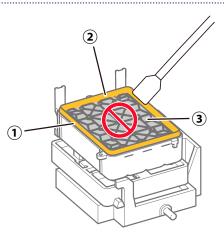
- Use a dry cleaning stick. Using a wet cleaning stick could cause damage to the print head.
- Do not touch the tip of the cleaning stick. If finger print oil gets on the stick, it will damage the print head.
- Do not reuse cleaning sticks. This will cause dust to adhere, leading to malfunction.
- The standard maintenance time is within 5 minutes. If it takes longer, the print head will get dried, causing the damage.

### Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode.

Open the front cover.

3 Using a cleaning stick, clean the outer edge ( ① ) and inner edge ( ② ) of the cap unit to wipe off the sticking ink and dust.

- ①: outer edge of cap unit
- + 2 : inner edge of cap unit
- ③ : absorber (Do not touch)





#### Close the front cover.



#### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

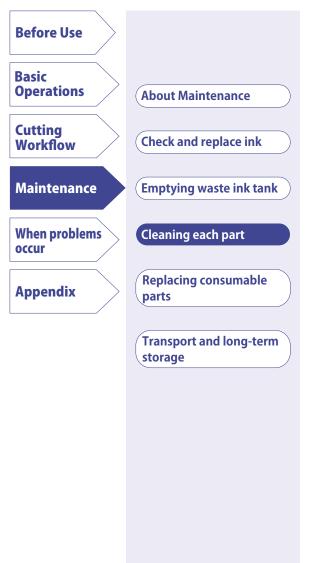
- Inside the front cover, the carriage will move to the maintenance position on the origin side.
- 6 Once the carriage has moved to the maintenance position on the origin side, short press the operation key again.
  - Inside the front cover, the carriage will move back in place.

# Press

Press

### 🛄 Note

Put the used cleaning stick in a plastic bag and dispose of it according to the local regulations.



### **Cleaning of color sensor**

#### When to clean:

- Repeatedly failed to perform automatic print quality calibration
- Repeatedly failed to read crop marks

#### What you need:

- cleaning stick
- ethanol (more than 50% ethanol)

### G Important #

Follow the instruction below during cleaning:

- Do not push hard on the color sensor glass with cleaning stick. This will cause damage to the glass.
- Do not reuse the cleaning stick. This will cause dust to adhere to the sensor, leading to malfunction.
- The standard maintenance time is about five minutes. If it takes longer, the print head will get dried, causing the damage.

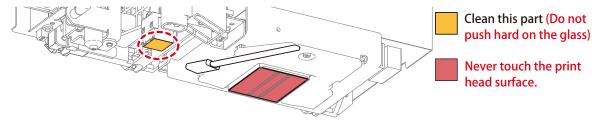
### Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode.

**W** "Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode" P.183

### Open the front cover.



Using the cleaning stick dampened with small amount of ethanol, gently clean the bottom of the carriage to wipe off ink or dust.



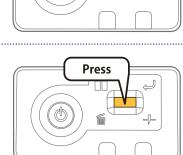


#### Close the front cover.

5

#### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

- Inside the front cover, the carriage will move to the maintenance position on the origin side.
- 6 Once the carriage has moved to the maintenance position on the origin side, short press the operation key again.
  - Inside the front cover, the carriage will move back in place.



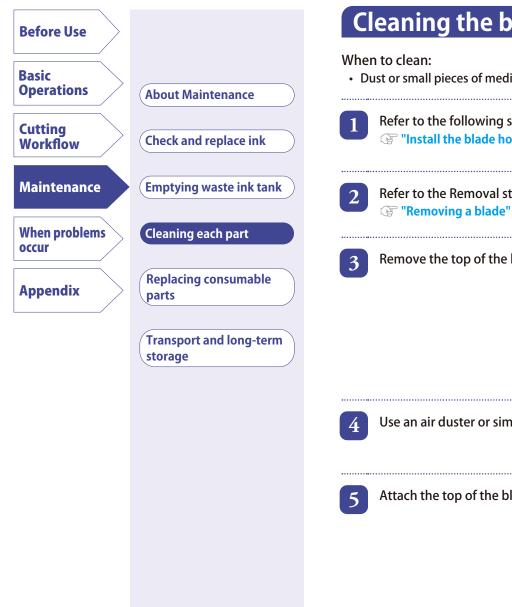
Press

### G Important #

If the problem persists, please contact your local MUTOH dealer.

### **Note**

Put the used cleaning stick in a plastic bag and dispose of it according to the local regulations.



### **Cleaning the blade holder**

• Dust or small pieces of media are accumulated in the blade holder.

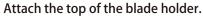
Refer to the following section to remove the blade holder. The stall the blade holder into the machine" P.119

Refer to the Removal steps of the following section and remove the cutter blade. **Breweing a blade**" P.116

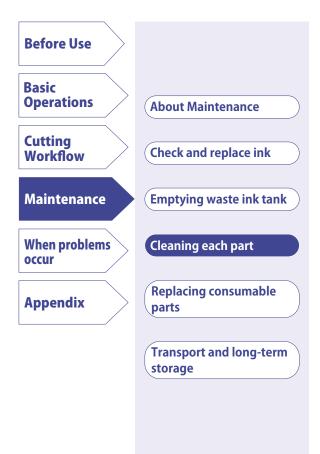
Remove the top of the blade holder.



Use an air duster or similar tool to remove dust and small pieces of media built inside the blade holder.







6

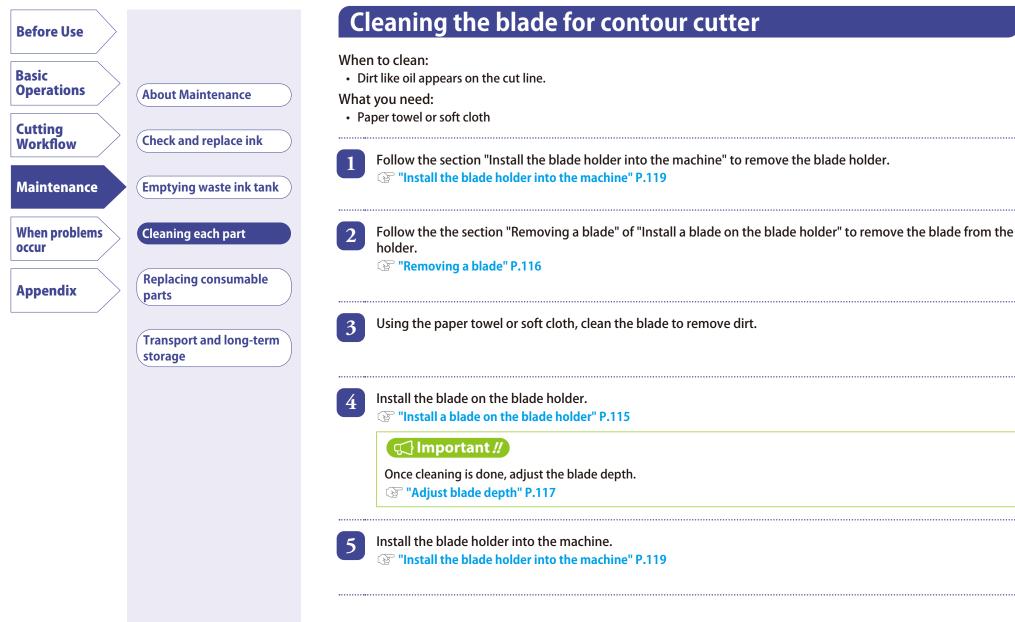
Refer to the installation steps of the following section and attach the blade to the blade holder. "Installing a blade" P.115

### G Important #

After cleanig the blade holder, adjust the blade depth. **Adjust blade depth** P.117

### 7

Attach the blade holder to the machine. "Install the blade holder into the machine" P.119





### **Cleaning inside the machine**

#### When to clean:

- Once a month
- you see ink or dust on the machine

#### What you need:

- Soft brush
- Paper towel or soft cloth
- Ethanol (more than 50% ethanol)
- Polyethylene gloves (commercially available)

### Caution

• Before performing this cleaning, make sure to turn off the machine and unplug it.

Be careful not to get ink in your eyes or on skin. Wear protective gloves.
 If in eyes or on skin, immediately flush with water. If left untreated, it could result in bloodshot eyes or mild inflammation. If abnormality persists, seek medical advice immediately.

### Remove a roll media.

Check that the machine is powered off.

### Open the front cover.

### G Important #

The heater temperature becomes high right after printing. Touch the platen or media guide and allow it to cool down if it is hot.

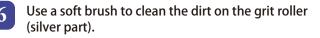


Use a soft brush to clean the dust off the pinch roller arms.

### G Important #

Do not use air duster to clean the dust inside the printer. This will cause dust to accumulate on the moving parts, leading to damage or noise.

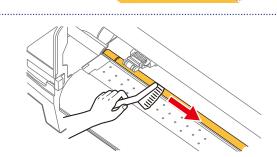
Using a paper towel or a soft cloth dampened with small amount of ethanol, clean the dust on the platen, media guide and edge holders.



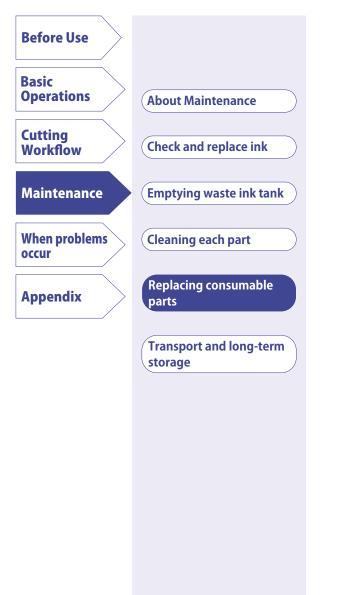
### G Important #

Manually turn the grit roller on the left side of the front cover to change the surface to clean.

### Close the front cover.



mmu



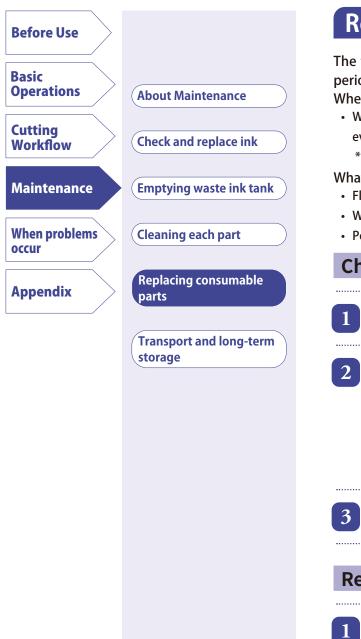
# **Replacing consumable parts**

In order to maintain consistent printing quality, the following parts must be replaced periodically.

### Caution

- Be careful not to get ink in your eyes or on skin. Wear protective gloves.
- If in eyes or on skin, immediately flush with water. If left untreated, it could result in bloodshot eyes or mild inflammation. If abnormality persists, seek medical advice immediately.

| Parts                                  | When to replace                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Flushing box pad                       | When looking from the side, the ink deposits on the flushing pad is visible through the flushing box frame. (Approximately every two months) * *It depends on your use frequency. Check it periodically.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Sheet Cutter                           | <ul> <li>When the cutter cannot cut media cleanly.</li> <li>When the cut is fuzzy.</li> <li><b>"Replacing the blade for sheet cutter" P.203</b></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Plug of high-capacity ink pack adapter | It depends on your use frequency. Check it periodically.<br><b>Replacing the adapter's plug for high-capacity ink pack adapter" P.205</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Cutting mat                            | <ul> <li>When you notice many visible cutting marks</li> <li>When cutting is inconsistent</li> <li><b>"Replacing the cutting mat" P.209</b></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Contour Cutter                         | When cutting is inconsistent     Image: Second system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Blade Holder                           | <ul> <li>The tip of the blade holder is worn out and the cutting is inconsistent.</li> <li>Even after cleaning the blade holder, cutting becomes unstable due to small pieces of media buildup</li> <li>"Replacing the blade holder" P.212</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Cleaning wiper                         | Once every twelve months       Image: Second state of the second st |



### Replacing the flushing box pad

The flushing box is a part that collects inks spitted from the print head. Please replace the flushing box pad periodically. If used without replacing, it can cause damage to the print head. When to replace:

• When looking from the side, the ink deposits on the flushing pad is visible through the flushing box frame. (Approximately every two months) \*

\*It depends on your use frequency. Check it periodically.

What you need:

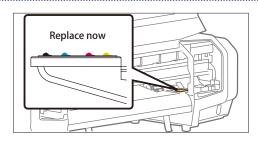
- Flushing box pad
- Waste paper (paper that ink does not bleed through)
- Polyethylene gloves (commercially available)

### **Checking steps**

Open the front cover.

### Check the pad of the flushing box.

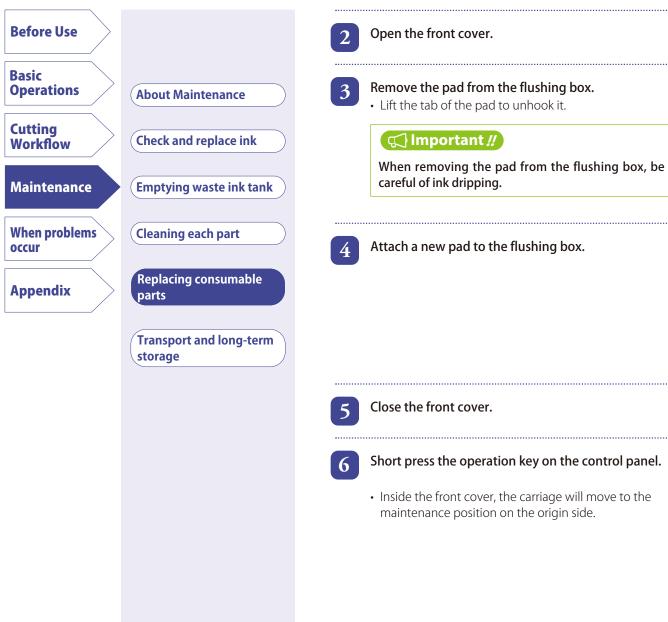
• (When looking from the side) if the ink deposits on the flushing pad is visible through the flushing box frame, you need to replace it.

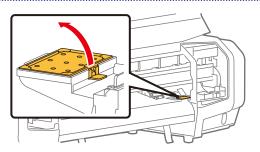


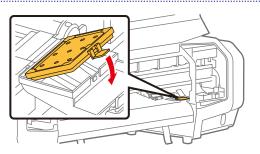
Close the front cover.

### **Replacing steps**

Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode. "Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode" P.183

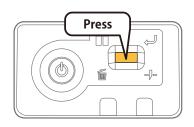


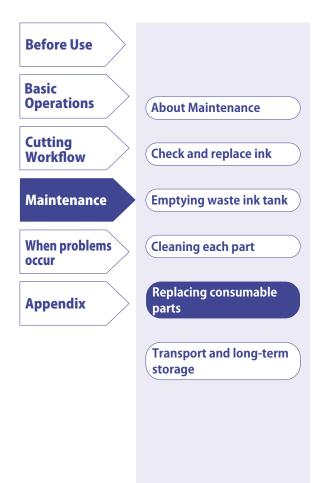




#### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

• Inside the front cover, the carriage will move to the maintenance position on the origin side.

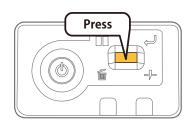






Once the carriage has moved to the maintenance position on the origin side, short press the operation key again.

• Inside the front cover, the carriage will move back in place.





### **Replacing the blade for sheet cutter**

#### When to replace:

- When the cutter cannot cut a roll media cleanly.
- When the cut is fuzzy

### What you need:

Replacement cutter blade



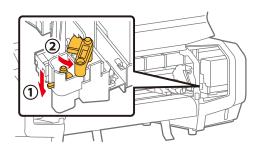


- Do not push the tab on the cutter holder too hard or release suddenly. There is a spring under the cutter so that the cutter may jump out from the holder.
- Do not touch the cutter blade. It may cause injury.

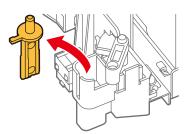
### Open the front cover.



Lightly push down the tab on the cutter holder (1), and turn the cutter cap in the direction shown in the illustration (2).



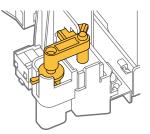
#### Remove the cutter.





### Attach a new cutter.

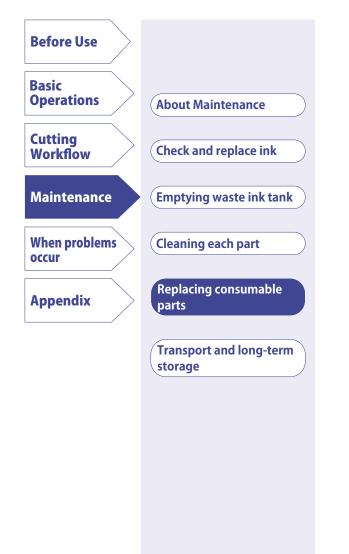
• Put the cutter cap back to the original position.





4

Close the front cover.



### Replacing the adapter's plug for high-capacity ink pack adapter

You will need to replace the plug of the high-capacity ink pack adapter after the adapter has been removed and loaded for the certain number of times.

### 🛄 Note

For proper instructions of high-capacity ink pack adapter, see the high-capacity ink pack adapter's operation manual.

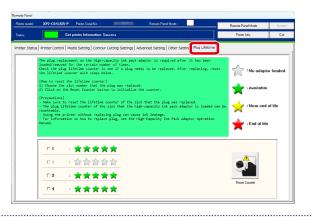
### 1. Checking the life of adapter's plug

The plug life decreases as the high-capacity ink pack adapter is removed and inserted. Follow these steps to check the life of the plug periodically.

### Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start P.28

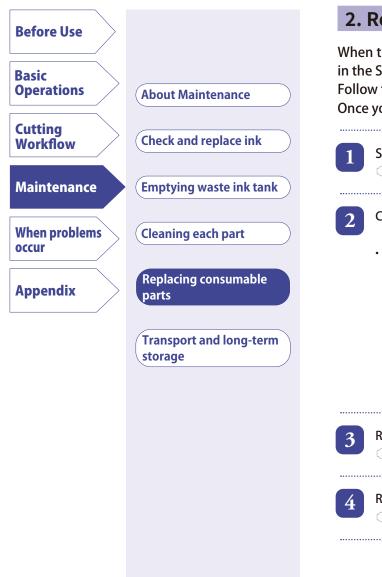
### Click the [Plug Lifetime] tab.

- The plug life is indicated the number of green stars. For a new plug, five stars appear.
- The number of stars decreases one by one (one star = 20%) as the plug is nearing the end of life.
- The yellow star indicates that the plug has reached nearing the end of life. Please prepare the replacement plug.
- When the red star appears, you have to replace with a new plug.



### 🛄 Note

Replacement plugs are supplied with high-capacity ink pack adapter.

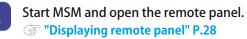


### 2. Replacing with a new plug

When the plug has reached the end of life, the error LED on the control panel turns on and the message appears in the Status Information on MSM.

Follow these steps to replace with a new plug.

Once you replace it and reset the life counter for plug, the error LED will turn off.



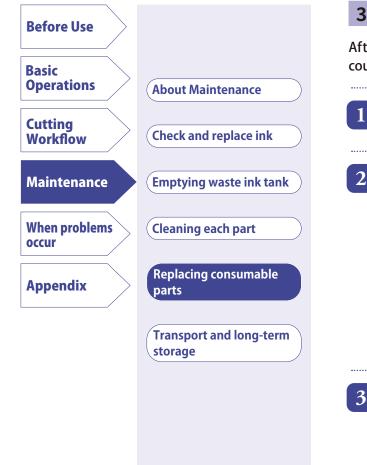
#### Check the Status Information.

• For example, when the message "Replace plug. No.2 4" is displayed, the plug of the high-capacity ink pack adapter inserted in the slots 2 and 4 must be replaced.



Refer to the High-capacity ink pack adapter operation manual to replace with a new plug. **High-Capacity Pack Adapter Instruction Manual "3.3 Adapter Plug Replacement"** 

Reset the plug lifetime counter of the ink slot you have replaced the plug. **"3. Resetting the plug lifetime counter" P.207** 



### 3. Resetting the plug lifetime counter

After the plug of high-capacity ink pack adapter has replaced, follow these steps to reset the plug lifetime counter.

Start MSM and open the remote panel. **"Displaying MSM" P.27** 



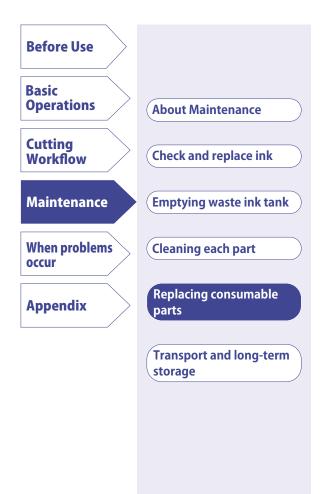
In the Plug Lifetime tab, check the ink slot number you have replaced the plug.



Click [Reset Counter].







### 4 Click [Yes].

• The counter of the selected ink slot will reset.

| Confirmat | tion                                                                                                                                             | ×         |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| ?         | Are you sure you want to initialize the plug lifetime country No. 7 *Make sure to reset the lifetime counter of the slot that plug was replaced. |           |
|           | [ <u>Y</u> es]                                                                                                                                   | <u>ło</u> |

### G Important/

Never reset the lifetime counter of the plug you have not replaced. This will cause ink leakage.



### Replacing the cutting mat

#### When to replace:

- When you notice many visible cutting marks
- When cutting is inconsistent

### What you need:

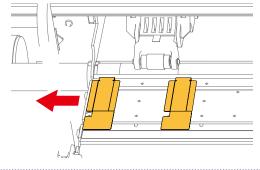
- Replacement cutting mat
- Ethanol (more than 50% ethanol)



Open the front cover.

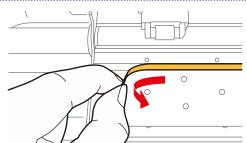


Slide the edge holders to the left side of the printer and remove them from the platen.





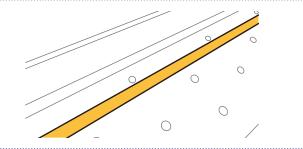
Slowly peel off the cutting mat to remove it from the platen.







Remove the adhesive material left on the platen.





Use a soft cloth dampened with small amount of ethanol to wipe off the adhesive.

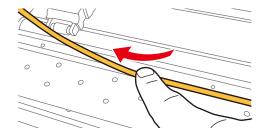


Once ethanol is completely dried, attach the new cutting mat along the groove.

• Push the mat to remove air bubble.

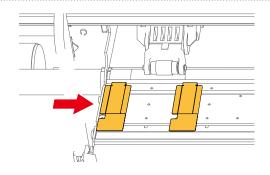
### G Important/

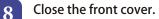
To avoid warp of the cutting mat, rub the mat with a dry cloth while pressing it down. Repeat this more than 3 times from the origin side.

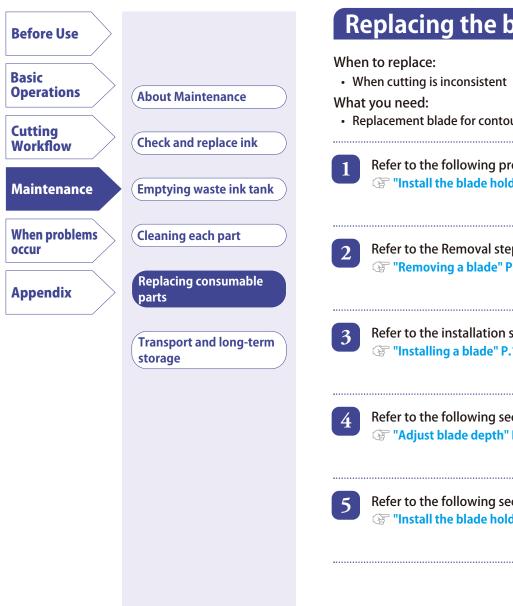




Attach the edge holders from the left side of the platen.







### **Replacing the blade for contour cutter**

• Replacement blade for contour cutter

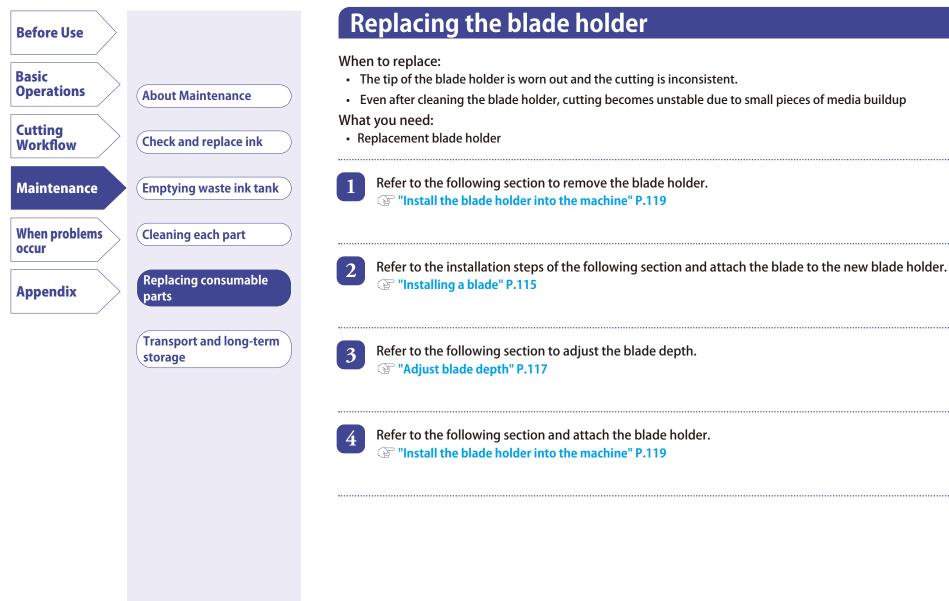
Refer to the following procedure and remove the blade holder. **Part of the second sec** 

Refer to the Removal steps of the following section and remove the cutter blade. **Break States and Serving a blade**" P.116

Refer to the installation steps of the following section to attach the new blade. **B** "Installing a blade" P.115

Refer to the following section to adjust the blade depth. The second secon

Refer to the following section to attach the blade holder. **The second seco** 



### Replacing the blade holder

When to replace:

- The tip of the blade holder is worn out and the cutting is inconsistent.
- Even after cleaning the blade holder, cutting becomes unstable due to small pieces of media buildup

### What you need:

Replacement blade holder

Refer to the following section to remove the blade holder. **W** "Install the blade holder into the machine" P.119

Refer to the following section to adjust the blade depth. The second secon

Refer to the following section and attach the blade holder. The stall the blade holder into the machine" P.119



### **Replacing the cleaning wiper**

When to replace:

- Approximately every 12 months
- What you need:
- Replacement cleaning wiper
- Waste paper (paper that ink does not bleed through)
- Polyethylene gloves

### **Replacement procedure**

Put the machine into the CR maintenance mode. **Put the machine in the CR maintenance mode P.183** 

Open the front cover.

Cover the platen with the waste paper.

### G Important //

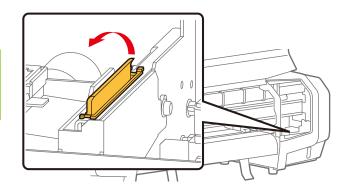
Ink may drip from the cleaning wiper. We recommend covering the floor with paper as well.

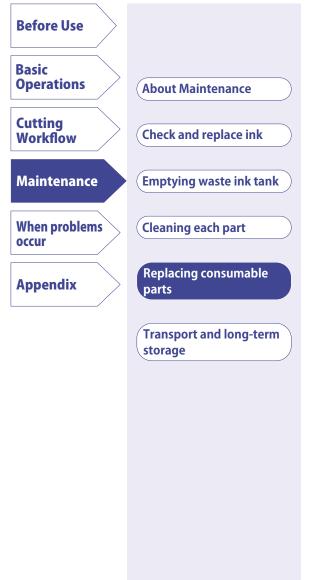
### Remove the cleaning wiper.

• Lift the hook and remove the cleaning wiper.

### 🛄 Note

Put the used wiper in a plastic bag and dispose of it according to the local regulations.





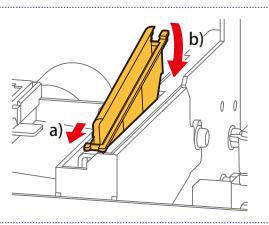
### 5 F

#### Follow these steps to attach a new cleaning wiper.

- a) Slide the front side of the new cleaning wiper into its slot.
- b) Press the wiper hook down until it clicks into place.

### G Important #

Do not touch the rubber part of the cleaning wiper with bare hands. If sebum gets on it, it will damage the print head.



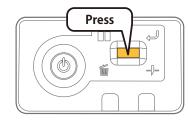
### Close the front cover.

### 7

6

#### Short press the operation key on the control panel.

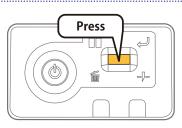
• Inside the front cover, the carriage will move to the maintenance position on the origin side.

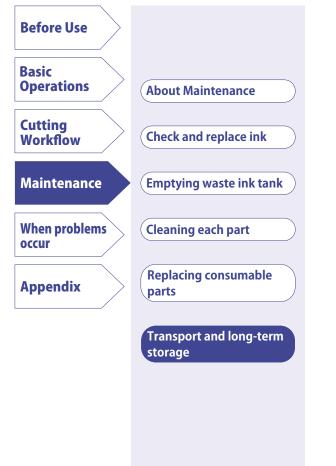


### 8

## Once the carriage has moved to the maintenance

- position on the origin side, short press the operation key again.
  - Inside the front cover, the carriage will move back in place.





# **Transport and long-term storage**

Refer to this section when you transport the product or you are not using it for a long period of time.

### **Transporting the machine**

When transporting the product, you will need to perform "Longstore" to flush ink out of the machine, empty the waste ink tank and secure the print head with the shipping bracket. Failure to do so could cause ink leakage, leading to damage to the print head. When you use the machine again, you will do the machine installation and initial ink charging.

### G Important/

- When moving this machine, empty the waste ink tank even moving short distance. Failure to do so may result in damage to the machine.
- Do not tilt, lean or turn the machine upside down. The ink inside the machine may spill. MUTOH does not guarantee that the machine can run properly.

### 1. Flushing ink out of the printer and emptying the waste ink tank

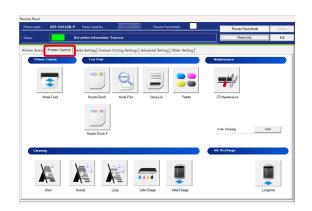


Start MSM and open the remote panel. Start MSM and open the remote panel P.28



#### Click the Printer Control tab.

• The Printer Control tab page opens.







### Click [Longstore] in the Ink Discharge menu.

• The machine will begin flushing ink out.

### Click [Start] in the Longstore tab page.

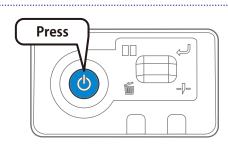
- Follow the on-screen instruction to do the flushing.
- Once finished, do not restart the machine or perform initial ink charging.

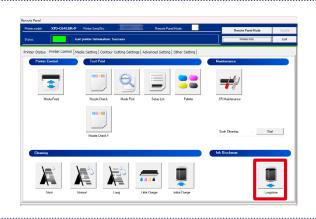
### Empty the waste ink tank.

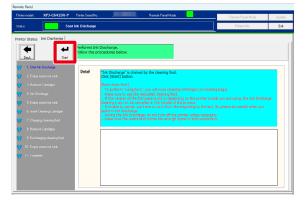
**Emptying waste ink tank" P.172** 

### Press the Power button to turn off the machine.

- The blue lamp turns off.
- The machine begins powering off.



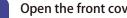






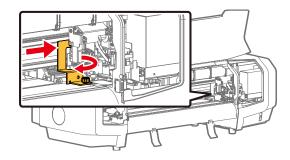
### 2. Repacking

Remove all the cables including power cord.

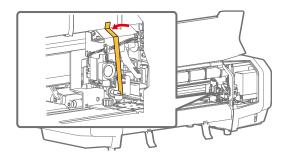


Open the front cover.

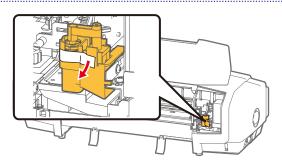
Attach the carriage shipping bracket with screw.

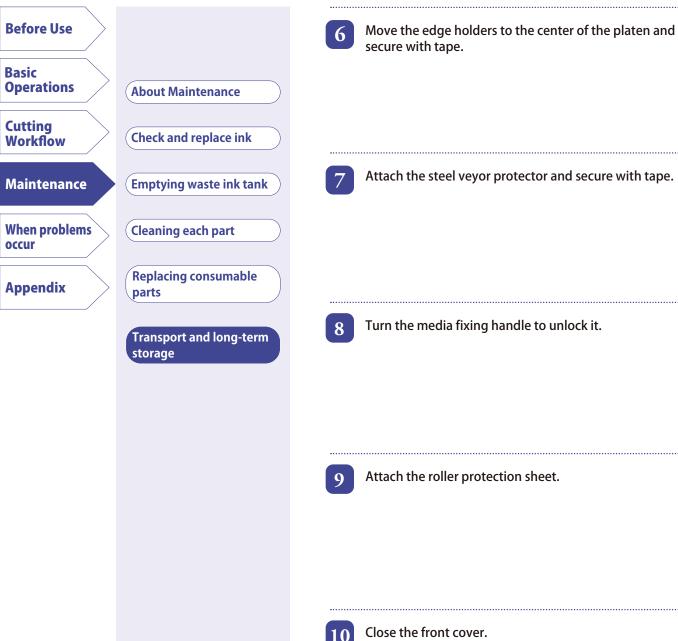


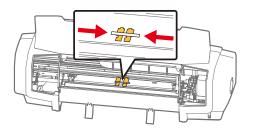
Secure the contour cutter with tape.



Secure the sheet cutter with tape.

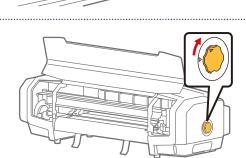






Attach the steel veyor protector and secure with tape.

Turn the media fixing handle to unlock it.

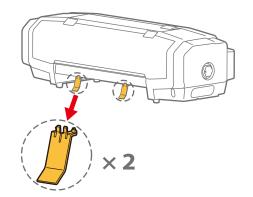


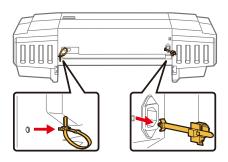




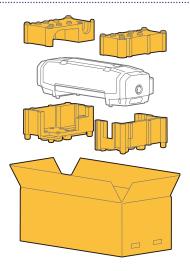
Remove the two media guides.

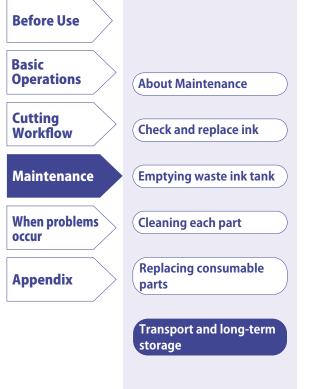
Remove the cable tie and cord clamp.





Attach the cushioning materials and put the product in the packaging box.

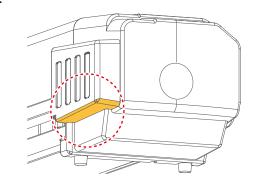




#### De Note

When moving this product, hold the following parts of the product.





#### 3. Reinstalling the product



Follow the instructions on the Startup Guide and unpack and assemble the product.Do the procedures until the section "Preparations".



Perform initial ink charging.

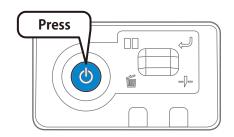
**Ferforming initial ink charging P.221** 



## Performing initial ink charging



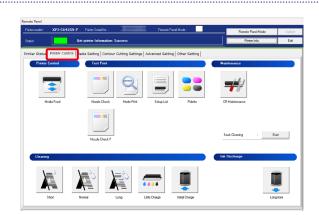
- Press the power button on this machine.
- The blue lamp on the panel will light up.
- Machine initialization begins.





#### 3 Click the Printer Control tab.

• The Printer Control tab page opens.



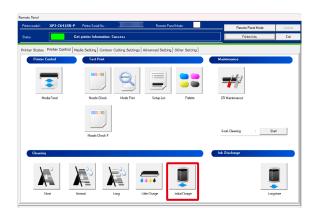


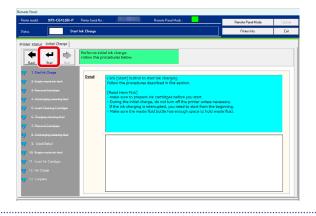


#### Click [Initial Charge] in the Maintenance menu.

• The Initial Charge page appears.

Empty the waste ink tank and click [Start]. Emptying waste ink tank" P.172

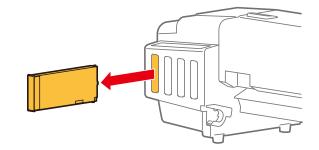


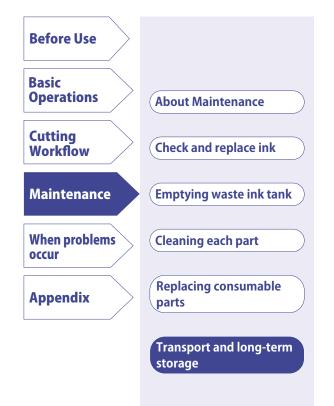


• If ink cartridges are installed in the ink slots, remove all of them.

- The machine begins initial ink charging.
  - When using ink cartridges" P.223

 $\textcircled{\sc blue}$  "When using ink bags with high-capacity ink pack adapters" P.224





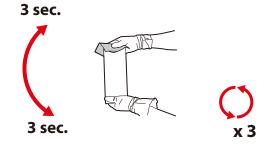
#### When using ink cartridges

Prepare new ink cartridges and follow these steps to agitate ink.

- 1. Hold the ink cartridge with the ink outlet facing up and count for three seconds.
- **2.** Invert it so that the ink outlet faces down and count for three seconds.
- **3.** Repeat this three times.

#### G Important/

Make sure to use new ink cartridges. If a used ink cartridge does not have enough ink, it will run out of ink during initial ink charging and will consume more ink.

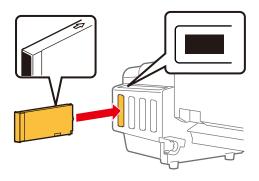


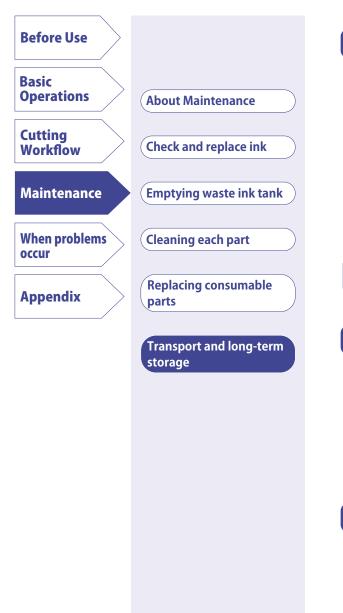
#### 2 Insert the ink cartridges.

- Match the color of the ink cartridge with the color of the label attached to the ink slot.
- Face the arrow mark upward.
- Insert it all the way in.

#### **Note**

Once all the ink cartridges are inserted, the machine begins filling ink.

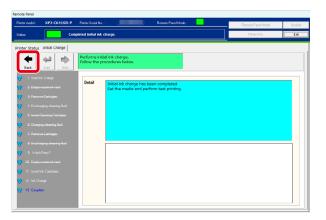






#### In the [Complete] step, click [Back].

• This will end the ink charging process.



### When using ink bags with high-capacity ink pack adapters

Take a new ink bag out of its packaging.

#### G Important #

- Make sure to use new ink bags. If a used ink bag does not have enough ink, it will run out of ink during initial ink charging and will consume more ink.
- Open the packaging of the ink bag immediately prior to installing to the high-capacity ink pack adapter. Leaving it open for a long time could prevent normal printing.

Insert the ink bag and a smartchip card to the high-capacity ink pack adapter.

#### Note

2

For insertion and removal procedure, see the operation manual supplied with the high-capacity ink pack adapter.



#### Follow these steps to agitate ink.

- 1. Hold the ink bag with the high-capacity ink pack adapter from the top and bottom so that the ink bag is not removed. Face the ink outlet up and count for three seconds.
- **2.** Invert it so that the ink outlet faces down and count for three seconds.
- **3.** Repeat this three times. $_{\circ}$

## Insert the high-capacity ink pack adapters into each slot.

- Match the color of the high-capacity ink pack adapter with the color of the label attached to the ink slot.
- Insert it all the way in.

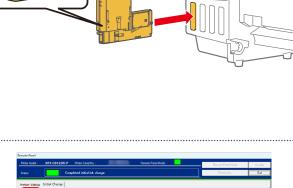
#### 📢 Important #

Do not insert the high-capacity ink pack adapter into the slot without the ink bag installed. The ink level information will be rewritten and those smartchip card and ink bag will no longer be available.



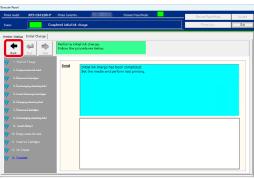
#### In the [Complete] step, click [Back].

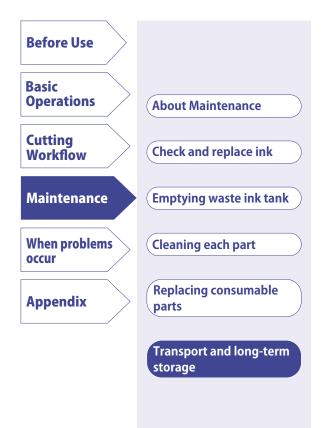
• This will end the ink charging process.



3 sec.

3 sec.





## When not using the machine for a long time

If you are not using the product for a long period of time, flush ink out of the machine and empty the waste ink • tank.

**W** "Transporting the machine" P.215 >"1. Flushing ink out of the printer and emptying the waste ink tank" P.215

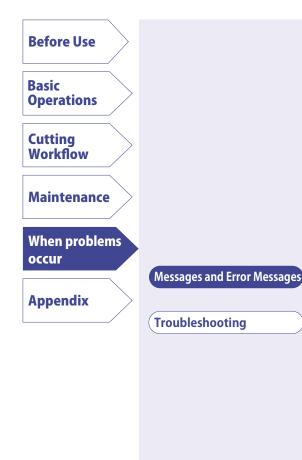
• Unlock the media fixing handle and raise the pinch rollers.



2

When using the product again, perform initial ink charging. **Performing initial ink charging**" P.221





## **Messages and Error Messages**

### When it appears

#### Check the message/ error/ warning

To check the messages that are displayed while printer is working normally or the error/warning that appears when a problem occurred, you will use MSM.

😂 митон

Setup(\$) He

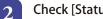
Date

Chec

| Start | M |
|-------|---|
|       |   |

#### SM.

"Launching/ Opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



#### Check [Status Information].

- The content of message/error/warning appears.
- If remedies for the problem are displayed, follow the instruction.

| Constraint for the set of th      | )               |                                                                |                                               |                                  | -            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------|
| and Time Update Jser Type Edit Printe Linformation Printe Linformation Printe Linformation Print History Remote Panel Cetal bitin Cetal bi | Menu            | 1.5                                                            |                                               | PR Moni                          | or 🗌 VSM     |
| Print Lat:         Print Lat:           Print Lat:         Print Model         Print Model         Print Model           Print History         BP2-C64138-P         Print Model         Print Model         Print Model           Remote Panel         Cate printer Information: Success         Cate May Model         Model         Model           Cetal Info:         Detail Model         Remote Panel         Cetal Info:         SUC Model         Model           tetr Info:         Detail Model         Remote Panel         Cetal Info:         SUC Model         Model         Model           tetr Info:         Dplot         Detail Model         Contract Model                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                 | ( Status Monitor                                               |                                               |                                  |              |
| Jaer Type Edit Pater Lat: Pater Model: xx4-C64138+P Pater Selfs No: PAter Self | nd Time Update  |                                                                | Printer                                       | Information                      |              |
| Image: Set Max     Prote: Set Max       Print: History     Print: Set Max       Print: History     Get print: Information: Success       Remote Panel     Detail Max       Iter: Tufo. Backup     Detail Max       Detail Max     Meater Max       Meater Max     Meater Max       Detail Max     Meater Max       Detail Max     Meater Max       Detail Max     Meater Max       Meater Max     Meater Max       Detail Max     Meater Max       Meater Max     Meater Max       Manuel Max     Meater Max       Manu                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | er Type Edit    | Printer List :                                                 |                                               |                                  | VOLCENCO D   |
| Immute opdate     PAddes:     -       Remote Panel     Get printer information: Success     Converting with the One       Inter Info. Backup     Detail bits     Training with the One       Info. Upload     Detail bits     Training with the One       Info. Upload     Detail bits     Training with the One       Info. Upload     Detail bits     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One       Detail bits     Training with the One     Training with the One </td <td></td> <td>P1-C6415P-P</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Ara-Course-r</td>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                 | P1-C6415P-P                                                    |                                               |                                  | Ara-Course-r |
| c current firmware Print History Cet printer Information: Success Cetue Right Let Date Cetal Date C | iware Update    | a s construction of                                            |                                               |                                  |              |
| Print History         Get printer Information: Success         Canual Hyst         Mo Date           Remote Panel         Detail bits         Status Mail         Heatr Hat         SUD Hat         Heatr Hat         Mo Date           Inter Info. Backup         Detail bits         Status Mail         Heatr Hat         SUD Hat         Heatr Hat         <                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | urrent firmware |                                                                |                                               |                                  |              |
| Compare Panel         Compare Panel           nter Info. Backup         Head Vortice Mo.           1000 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 / 100 /                                                                                              |                 |                                                                |                                               | Filmware Version M 7 L :         | / -          |
| Deal Min         Suban Min         Henry Min         SUD Min         Head/Convider Min           Inter Info. Backup         Inter Info.         SUD Min         Head/Convider Min         Inter Info.           Inter Info. Upload         Inter Info.         Backup Min         Inter Info.         SUD Min         Inter Info.           Inter Info.         Upload         Inter Info.         Backup Min         Inter Info.         Sub Min         Inter Info.           Inter Info.         Upload         Inter Info.         Backup Min         Inter Info.         Sub Min <td>int History</td> <td>Get printer Informal</td> <td>tion: Success</td> <td>. Curdual Right</td> <td>Info Check</td>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | int History     | Get printer Informal                                           | tion: Success                                 | . Curdual Right                  | Info Check   |
| Deal Min         Suban Min         Henry Min         SUD Min         Head/Convider Min           Inter Info. Backup         Inter Info.         SUD Min         Head/Convider Min         Inter Info.           Inter Info. Upload         Inter Info.         Backup Min         Inter Info.         SUD Min         Inter Info.           Inter Info.         Upload         Inter Info.         Backup Min         Inter Info.         Sub Min         Inter Info.           Inter Info.         Upload         Inter Info.         Backup Min         Inter Info.         Sub Min <td>mote Panel</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>_</td>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | mote Panel      |                                                                |                                               |                                  | _            |
| Date(YYY)-WH-00-HH:HW)         Contents           2024-10-14 13:33         Remaining roll media length : 30.0 [ m ]           2024-10-14 13:33         No Cartinger No.1 ]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                 |                                                                | ater Info. S/C Info.                          | Head/Cartridge Info.             |              |
| 2024-10-14 13:33 Remaining roll media length : 30.0 [ m ]<br>2024-10-14 13:33 No Cartridge No. : 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                 | Court and. The first the                                       |                                               |                                  |              |
| 2024-10-14 13:33 Remaining roll media length : 30.0 [ m ]<br>2024-10-14 13:33 No Cartridge No. : 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | er Info. Backup |                                                                | Ctatua                                        | Information                      |              |
| MSM Minimize)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                 |                                                                |                                               | Information                      |              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                 | Date(YYYY-NN-DD-HN:NN)<br>2024-10-14 13:33                     | Contents<br>Remaining roll                    | media length : 30.0 [ m          | 3            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 3            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | ]            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 3            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | ]            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 3            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 3            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | ]            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 3            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 1            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 1            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 3            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | er Info. Upload | Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HM:NM)<br>2024-10-14 13:33<br>2024-10-14 13:33 | Contents<br>Remaining roll<br>No Cartridge No | media length : 30.0 [ m<br>. : 1 | 3            |

#### 🔲 Note

- When the remote panel opens, you can check it from [Printer Status] [Status Information].
- When an error occurs, the operation may be paused. It will resume after the cause of error is cleared.



#### Message appeared on the control panel

The error LED on the control panel turns on.



Check the content of message on MSM and deal with it. Check the message/ error/ warning" P.228

#### Error message appeared on the control panel

The error LED on the control panel turns on with beep sound. (For warning, it blinks)



If it keeps beeping, short press the operation key on the control panel.

• The buzzer stops.





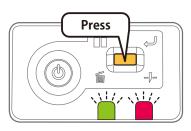
Check the content of error/warning on MSM and deal with it. Check the message/ error/ warning" P.228

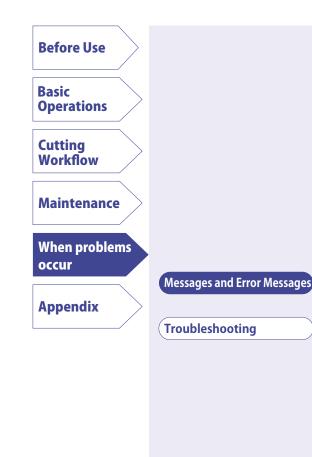
#### In the emergency mode

When a system error occurs, the data LED and error LED on the control panel blink concurrently and a beep sound continues at regular intervals.

Short press the operation key on the control panel.

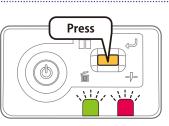
• The beep stops.





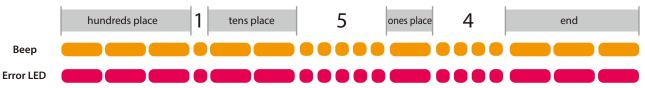
| 2 | Use MSM to check the content of the system error.<br>"Check the content of error in emergency mode" P.231                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | <ul><li> If you could check the error content, move to [5].</li><li> If you are unable to view the status monitor, move to [3].</li></ul> |
| 3 | If you are unable to view the status monitor, short press the operation key on the control panel again.                                   |

• The LED flashes and the buzzer beeps in regular pattern. This pattern indicates the error code.



#### Count the number of times the short buzzer beeps (or short LED blinks).

- The error code is three digits.
- The long buzzer indicates the digit of the error code and the short buzzer that beeps after long buzzer indicates the error code.
- For example, when the error code 154 occurs, it beeps as follows:
- Long buzzer: 3 times, <u>Short buzzer: 1 time</u>, Long buzzer: 2 times, <u>Short buzzer: 5 times</u>, Long buzzer: 1 time, <u>Short buzzer: 4 times</u>, Long buzzer: 3 times



#### **Note**

- The pattern is not repeated. To check it again, short press the operation key on the control panel.
- If the error code for a digit is "0", only a long buzzer beeps, followed by a period of silence and then a long buzzer indicating the next digit beeps. The error LED also only blinks long and moves to the next long blink without a short blink.



#### Check the points below: 5

- Open the front cover and check if the media is jammed. If yes, remove it.
- If there are any parts that you replaced, check that it is installed correctly.

Turn off the machine and wait for more than 10 seconds. 6 Then turn it on. If the same error occurs, please contact your local MUTOH dealer.

### Check the content of error in emergency mode



"Launching/ Opening/Exiting MSM" P.27



#### Check [Printer Information] and [Detail Info.].

• The content of system error and remedy are displayed.

| Menu                 | Login ID: -                                                  | PR Monitor VSM Mo            |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|                      | Status Monitor                                               |                              |
| Printer Info. Backup |                                                              | Printer Information          |
| Printer Info. Upload | Printer List :                                               | Pinter Model :               |
| Exit(MSM Minimize)   | XP3-C64158-P                                                 | Printer Senial No            |
|                      |                                                              | IP Address :                 |
|                      |                                                              | Firmware Version M / C : / - |
|                      | Printer Err.: AC Shut Down                                   | Control Right Info Check     |
|                      | Detail Info.                                                 |                              |
|                      |                                                              | Detail Information           |
|                      | Restart the Printer.                                         |                              |
|                      | If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer. |                              |
|                      |                                                              |                              |
|                      |                                                              |                              |
|                      |                                                              |                              |
|                      |                                                              |                              |
|                      |                                                              |                              |
|                      |                                                              |                              |
|                      |                                                              |                              |

| Before Use             |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations    |                             |
| Cutting<br>Workflow    |                             |
| Maintenance            |                             |
| When problems<br>occur |                             |
| Appendix               | Messages and Error Messages |
| /                      | (Troubleshooting            |
| /                      | Troubleshooting             |
|                        | Troubleshooting             |
| /                      | Troubleshooting             |
|                        | Troubleshooting             |

## **Error messages and solutions**

This section describes error messages and solutions to the messages. When an error occurs on the product, an error message will appear on MSM. The machine may stop operation depending on the error.

| Dispaly                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cover Open                                                   | The front cover is open.<br>Close it.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Lever Up                                                     | The media fixing handle is unlocked.<br>Lock the handle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Ink End No.****                                              | The ink is out. (The machine will stop operation)<br>Replace with a new ink cartridge.<br><b>"Replacing with a new ink cartridge" P.167</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| S/C Card Error No.****                                       | Unable to recognize the smartchip card.<br>Insert the smartchip card correctly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| No Cartridge No.****                                         | Ink cartridge is not loaded. (The machine will stop<br>operation)<br>Insert the ink cartridge.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Full WastelnkTank                                            | The waste ink tank is full. (The machine will stop operation)<br>Immediately drain the waste fluids into a container. Once<br>emptying the tank, reset the waste ink counter to zero in<br>MSM.<br>The mathematical states are as a state of the machine of the states of |
| Cartridge size unsupport. No.****                            | Unsupported cartridge is installed.<br>Use a supported cartridge for this product.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Check that the ink cartridge is correctly installed. No.**** | • When using ink cartridges<br>Unable to recognize the ink cartridge correctly. Insert the<br>ink cartridge again. If this error persists, contact your local<br>MUTOH dealer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                              | • When using high-capacity ink pack adapters<br>You have replaced with a new smartchip card, but probably<br>forgot to replace the ink bag. Replace both smartchip card<br>and ink bag in a set.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| Before Use                                        | Check that correct color is correctly installed. No.****                                                                | Ink cartridge is inserted into a wrong slot.<br>Insert it into the correct slot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic                                             | S/C card Recognition Error No.****                                                                                      | Time Smartchip Recovery" P.236                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Operations<br>Cutting<br>Workflow                 | Pinch roller position check(Right): Media Edge<br>Pinch roller position check(Left): Media Edge                         | <ul> <li>The pinch roller is not positioned properly.</li> <li>Position the pinch roller properly on media.</li> <li>3. Loading the media into the machine" P.54</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Maintenance<br>When problems<br>occur<br>Appendix | Pinch roller position check(Right): Grit roller projection<br>Pinch roller position check(Left): Grit roller projection | <ul> <li>The pinch roller is not positioned properly.</li> <li>Adjust the position so that the pinch rollers and media are on the protruding part of the grit roller.</li> <li>3. Loading the media into the machine" P.54</li> <li>You cannot position the pinch rollers correctly if the loaded media size is not supported by this printer. Please check the media size.</li> <li>3. Upported media" P.40</li> </ul> |
| Troubleshooting                                   | Pinch roller position error (Right)<br>Pinch roller position error (Left)                                               | <ul> <li>The position of the pinch roller is not correct. (The machine will stop operation)</li> <li>Make sure the rubber part of the pinch roller does not go beyond the media. Pinch rollers can get damaged if media is fed while the pinch rollers contact the protruding part of the grit roller.</li> <li>3. Loading the media into the machine" P.54</li> </ul>                                                  |
|                                                   | Media Recognition Error                                                                                                 | Failed to detect media. (The machine will stop operation)<br>Reload media.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                   | Media Slant Error                                                                                                       | Media is skewed. (The machine will stop operation)<br>Reload media.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                   | Roll Media End                                                                                                          | The machine has run out of media. (The machine will stop<br>operation)<br>Load a new roll media.<br>"Loading media into the machine" P.52                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

| Before Use<br>Basic                   | Roll Media End(Print Stop)              | The machine has run out of media. (The machine will stop operation)<br>Load a new roll media.                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operations<br>Cutting<br>Workflow     | Crop mark read error(Media set error)   | The machine may not be able to read the cropmarks if they<br>are not positioned correctly. Set media so that the bottom<br>edges of the two cropmarks on the front side are horizonta<br>on the cutting mat.<br><b>See "Step2. Cut" P.144</b> |
| Maintenance<br>When problems<br>occur | Crop mark read error(Media Skew Error)  | The machine may not be able to read the cropmarks properly if marks are skewed more than five degrees. Set media correctly.                                                                                                                   |
| Appendix<br>Troubleshooting           | Crop mark read error(Mark * read error) | Check if the marks failed to read are not dirty or faint. The mark number (*) corresponds to the detection order of cropmarks.                                                                                                                |
|                                       |                                         | 4 1<br>3 "Mark detection order" P.136                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                       | No Media                                | Ready to print. (No media is loaded)                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                       | Discharged                              | The machine is not filled with ink. Perform initial ink charging to fill ink in the machine.                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                       | Life Times[CR Motor]                    | CR motor is nearing the end of life. (The machine will<br>continue operation)<br>Please contact your local MUTOH dealer or MUTOH<br>customer service.                                                                                         |

| Before Use          |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations |                             |
| Cutting<br>Workflow |                             |
| Maintenance         |                             |
| When problems occur |                             |
|                     | Messages and Error Messages |
| Appendix            |                             |
|                     | Troubleshooting             |
|                     |                             |

| Life Times[PF Motor]                                                        | PF motor is nearing the end of life. (The machine will<br>continue operation)<br>Please contact your local MUTOH dealer or MUTOH<br>customer service.   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Life Times[Pump]                                                            | Pump motor is nearing the end of life. (The machine will<br>continue operation)<br>Please contact your local MUTOH dealer or MUTOH<br>customer service. |
| Change Plg. No.****                                                         | High-capacity ink pack adapter has been used for a certain number of times. Replace with a new plug.                                                    |
| Contour cutting is not possible because the take-up device is in operation. | When doing contour cutting, remove media from the take up unit and set the Output Mode to other than "Take up".                                         |
| Unlock the media fixing handle and then remove media                        | Unlock the media fixing handle. If media is loaded in the machine, remove the media.<br>Keep the handle unlocked when you are not using the machine.    |



## **Smartchip Recovery**

When the following message is prompted on MSM, a smartchip error such as broken chip may have occurred in the smartchip card. Check that the correct smartchip card is inserted and perform smartchip recovery. This will allow you to continue to print.

To perform smartchip recovery, do one of the followings according to the message appeared.

| Display                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S/C Recog. E No.: **** | <ul> <li>The smartchip card that needs smartchip recovery may have been installed.</li> <li>Remove the smartchip card and insert it again.</li> <li>If the printer is still unable to read it, insert a new smartchip card.</li> <li>If a message [[**] Check Color OK -&gt;Enter] appears after the smartchip card is reinserted, follow the message [[**] Check Color OK -&gt;Enter] to operate.</li> </ul>                                                                                                      |
| Check Color No. : **** | <ul> <li>The smartchip card that needs smartchip recovery may have been installed.</li> <li>Check that the ink color of the smartchip card inserted is correct.</li> <li>In case of wrong color insertion, insert a correct smartchip card.</li> <li>If color is correct, press [Enter] key. The printer will perform smartchip recovery and will continue to print.</li> <li>You can also perform smartchip recovery from [Clear printer status] on MSM.</li> <li>MUTOH Satus Monitor OPERATION MANUAL</li> </ul> |

#### 🛄 Note

During smartchip recovery execution, the ink cartridge number being recovered is highlighted in yellow in the S/C information on MSM.

**Before Use** 

Basic Operations

Cutting Workflow

Maintenance

When problems

(Messages and Error Messages

Appendix

Troubleshooting

## Troubleshooting

This section describes machine troubles that an error message is not prompted, and possible cause and solutions.

#### 🛄 Note

• The printer status and error information can be checked from Status Information on MSM. If your printer is not operating correctly, check this Status Information first.

Make sure to use the latest version of MSM.
 To check the latest available version, go to Help > Version > Check for updates on MSM.
 If old version is installed in your computer, download the latest version from MUTOH Club.

Startup Guide "Downloading software".

## Installation and initial setup-related trouble

| Symptoms                                 | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                          | Check that the front cover is closed.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Cannot perform initial ink charging      | Lock the media fixing handle.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                          | Make sure ink cartridges are seated all the way in.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Ink does not come out after ink charging | <ul> <li>Check that the ink cartridge is not too cold.</li> <li>Rest the ink cartridge at room temperature for at least three hours, and perform head cleaning several times.</li> <li>"Head cleaning" P.175</li> </ul> |
|                                          | <ul><li>Did you turn off the power during ink charging?</li><li>If yes, turn the power ON and perform an initial ink charging again.</li></ul>                                                                          |

| Before Use                                 | Symptoms                                             | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations<br>Cutting<br>Workflow | Nozzle clogging occurs after initial ink<br>charging | <ul> <li>Did you perform head cleaning?</li> <li>Perform a head cleaning and then check the printout.</li> <li>"Head cleaning" P.175</li> <li>If there is no improvement in the printout even after performing cleaning, rest the printer for at least one hour. Then perform cleaning or "Little Charge" again and check the printout.</li> <li>If the problem still persists, contact your local Mutoh dealer.</li> </ul> |
| Maintenance                                |                                                      | Check that the Ethernet cable is connected securely to the Ethernet port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| When problems                              |                                                      | Check that the network settings are configured correctly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Appendix<br>Troubleshooting                | MSM or RIP cannot access to the printer              | Check that the printer network settings match with the computer's settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

|                                      | Symptoms                                                                    | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations                  |                                                                             | Check that the power cord is plugged into the wall outlet.                                                                                                                                                        |
| Cutting                              |                                                                             | <ul><li>Does the AC power supply provide the specified voltage?</li><li>Connect the cable to another outlet.</li></ul>                                                                                            |
| Workflow                             |                                                                             | Check that the front cover is closed.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Maintenance                          |                                                                             | Lock the media fixing handle.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| When problems                        | Drinten de construcció et all often recursed en en                          | Check that the media is loaded into the printer correctly.<br>"Loading media into the machine" P.52                                                                                                               |
| occur<br>Messages and Error Messages | Printer does not work at all after powered on or even after media is loaded | Check that the ink cartridges are inserted into the ink slots.                                                                                                                                                    |
| Appendix Troubleshooting             |                                                                             | <ul> <li>Do you use the printer in the recommended environmental conditions?</li> <li>Make sure to use the printer within the specification range.</li> <li>Startup Guide "Check before installation".</li> </ul> |
|                                      |                                                                             | <ul> <li>Is there any error message displayed on MSM?</li> <li>Check if an error message is displayed in the Status Information o MSM.</li> <li>Check the message/ error/ warning" P.228</li> </ul>               |
|                                      |                                                                             | Unlock the media fixing handle.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                      | Unable to power off the machine                                             | <ul> <li>Is there any error message displayed on MSM?</li> <li>Check if an error message is displayed in the Status Information o MSM.</li> <li>Check the message/ error/ warning" P.228</li> </ul>               |

|                                    |                             | Symptoms                                                             | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations                |                             |                                                                      | Check that the media is loaded into the printer correctly.<br>"Loading media into the machine" P.52                                                                                                               |
| Cutting<br>Workflow<br>Maintenance |                             |                                                                      | <ul> <li>Are there any foreign materials such as torn paper on the pinch rollers?</li> <li>Clean the pinch rollers.</li> <li>Cleaning inside the machine" P.197</li> </ul>                                        |
| Vhen problems<br>occur             | Messages and Error Messages | Media slips, is torn or wrinkled during media initialization         | <ul> <li>Do you use the printer in the recommended environmental conditions?</li> <li>Make sure to use the printer within the specification range.</li> <li>Startup Guide "Check before installation".</li> </ul> |
| ppendix                            | Troubleshooting             |                                                                      | <ul> <li>Are any curls or warps present on your media?</li> <li>Place the edge holder on both edges of the media.</li> <li>Check that you select the appropriate vacuum fan setting.</li> </ul>                   |
|                                    |                             |                                                                      | <ul><li>Are you using a roll media that has fold, damage, torn or winding curls?</li><li>If yes, replace the media.</li></ul>                                                                                     |
|                                    |                             |                                                                      | Check that the media is loaded into the printer correctly.<br>Correctly into the machine P.52                                                                                                                     |
|                                    |                             |                                                                      | Check that the media is not skewed.                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                    |                             | Printer does not detect media correctly during media initialization. | <ul> <li>Do you use the printer in the recommended environmental conditions?</li> <li>Make sure to use the printer within the specification range.</li> <li>Startup Guide "Check before installation".</li> </ul> |
|                                    |                             |                                                                      | <ul> <li>Did you load the media which has been printed before?</li> <li>Use a new media.</li> </ul>                                                                                                               |

 $\sim$ 

| Before Use          |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations |                             |
| Cutting<br>Workflow |                             |
| Maintenance         |                             |
| When problems occur |                             |
| Appendix            | Messages and Error Messages |
|                     | Troubleshooting             |
|                     |                             |
|                     |                             |

| Symptoms                    | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                             | <ul> <li>Do you use the machine in the recommended environmental conditions?</li> <li>Make sure to use the machine within the specification range.</li> <li>Startup Guide "Check before installation".</li> </ul> |
| Media jams frequently occur | <ul><li>Are any curls or warps present on your media?</li><li>Set the edge holder at both edges of the media.</li><li>Check that you select the appropriate vacuum fan setting.</li></ul>                         |
|                             | <ul> <li>Are you using a roll media that has fold, damage, torn or winding curls?</li> <li>If yes, replace the media.</li> </ul>                                                                                  |

#### **Note**

If the media is jammed or torn, remove it according to "The media is jammed" P.250 .

| Symptoms                            | Possible causes and remedies                               |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| The media is skewed during printing | Check that the media is loaded into the machine correctly. |
|                                     | "Loading media into the machine" P.52                      |

| Before Use                                            | Symptoms                      | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations                                   |                               | <ul> <li>Are the cropmarks positioned correctly?</li> <li>Set the media so that the bottom edges of the two cropmarks on the front side are horizontal on the cutting mat.</li> <li>Step2. Cut" P.144</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                               |
| Cutting<br>Workflow<br>Maintenance                    |                               | <ul> <li>Check that the media is not skewed.</li> <li>The machine may not be able to read the cropmarks properly if marks are skewed more than five degrees. Set media correctly.</li> <li>Step2. Cut" P.144</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                        |
| When problems<br>occur<br>Appendix<br>Troubleshooting | Crop marks cannot be detected | <ul> <li>Are the crop marks readable?</li> <li>There are conditions that the color sensor is unable to detect the mark. Please check the following section.</li> <li>Step2. Cut" P.144</li> <li>Check if the marks failed to read are not dirty or faint. The mark number (*) corresponds to the detection order of cropmarks.</li> <li>Mark detection order" P.136</li> </ul> |
|                                                       |                               | Is the color sensor clean?         • Clean the color sensor. <sup>™</sup> Cleaning of color sensor" P.192                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                       |                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

| Basic<br>Operations<br>Cutting<br>Workflow<br>Maintenance<br>When problems<br>occur<br>Appendix<br>Cutting<br>Messages and Error Messages<br>Troubleshooting | Before Use          | $\geq$ |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------|--|
| Maintenance<br>When problems<br>occur<br>Appendix                                                                                                            | Basic<br>Operations | $\geq$ |  |
| When problems<br>occur<br>Appendix                                                                                                                           | Cutting<br>Workflow | $\geq$ |  |
| occur     Messages and Error Messages       Appendix     Messages and Error Messages                                                                         | Maintenance         | $\geq$ |  |
| Appendix                                                                                                                                                     |                     |        |  |
| Troubleshooting                                                                                                                                              | Appendix            |        |  |
|                                                                                                                                                              |                     |        |  |

## Printing-related trouble

| Symptoms                                                                                                        | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Machine does not print after data is sent                                                                       | Check that the Ethernet cable is connected securely to the Ethernet port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                 | <ul><li>Is there any error message displayed on MSM?</li><li>Check if an error message is displayed in the Status Information.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| The carriage pauses at either side of the machine while printing                                                | <ul> <li>Does your computer meet the following requirements?</li> <li>OS: Windows 11, Windows 10</li> <li>CPU: Intel (R) Core (TM) i5 or more</li> <li>Memory: No less than 16GB</li> <li>Network: Use a network port that supports Ethernet</li> </ul> Intervent Note <ul> <li>The OS support period of MUTOH software follows the Microsoft support lifecycle policies.</li> <li>When using RIP software, please also see the system requirements of your RIP software.</li> </ul> |
| Commentation and the second | <ul> <li>Are any curls or warps present on your media?</li> <li>Place the edge holder on both edges of the media.</li> <li>Check that you select the appropriate vacuum fan setting.</li> <li>"Loading media into the machine" P.52, "Set up vacuum fan" P.100</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Smears or missing area partially appear on the prints                                                           | <ul><li>Does the media contain moisture or have fold or wrinkles?</li><li>If yes, replace it with the new media.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                 | <ul> <li>Is there any dirt around the print head?</li> <li>If yes, clean the parts around the print head.</li> <li>Cleaning the parts around the print head" P.185</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| The printing position is incorrect (partially not printed in some area).                                        | Check that the media is loaded into the machine correctly.<br>"Loading media into the machine" P.52                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Before Use                           | Symptoms                              | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                      |                                       | <ul><li>Did you print on the printing side of media?</li><li>Check the printing side of media and load it correctly.</li></ul>                                                 |
| Basic<br>Operations<br>Cutting       | Printed line is blurred               | <ul> <li>Did you perform a print quality adjustment?</li> <li>Perform a print quality adjustment.</li> <li>Print quality calibration ("Adjust Print")" P.64</li> </ul>         |
| Workflow<br>Maintenance              |                                       | <ul> <li>Did you perform a media feed adjustment?</li> <li>Perform a media feed adjustment.</li> <li>Media Feed Adjustment" P.72</li> </ul>                                    |
| When problems<br>occur               |                                       | Check that the media is loaded into the machine correctly.<br>"Loading media into the machine" P.52                                                                            |
| Appendix Messages and Error Messages |                                       | <ul><li>Does the media contain moisture or have fold or wrinkles?</li><li>If yes, replace it with the new media.</li></ul>                                                     |
| Troubleshooting                      | White or black lines appear on prints | <ul> <li>Are nozzles in good condition?</li> <li>Run a nozzle check.</li> <li>If nozzle clogs, perform a head cleaning.</li> <li>If Nozzle check and cleaning" P.58</li> </ul> |
|                                      |                                       | <ul> <li>Did you perform a print quality adjustment?</li> <li>Perform a print quality adjustment.</li> <li>Print quality calibration ("Adjust Print")" P.64</li> </ul>         |
|                                      |                                       | <ul> <li>Did you perform a media feed adjustment?</li> <li>Perform a media feed adjustment.</li> <li>Image: "Media Feed Adjustment" P.72</li> </ul>                            |

| Before Use                           | Symptoms                                                      | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations                  |                                                               | <ul> <li>Are nozzles in good condition?</li> <li>Run a nozzle check.</li> <li>If nozzle clogs, perform a head cleaning.</li> <li>If Nozzle check and cleaning" P.58</li> </ul>                                                                                                       |
| Cutting<br>Workflow                  | Printed lines are not aligned/ doubled,<br>Printout is faint. | <ul> <li>Did you perform a print quality adjustment?</li> <li>Perform a print quality adjustment.</li> <li>Print quality calibration ("Adjust Print")" P.64</li> </ul>                                                                                                               |
| Maintenance<br>When problems         |                                                               | <ul> <li>Did you perform a media feed adjustment?</li> <li>Perform a media feed adjustment.</li> <li>Imedia Feed Adjustment" P.72</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                         |
| OCCUR<br>Messages and Error Messages | and Error Messages                                            | Is the ink within expiration date? <ul> <li>Use a non-expired ink.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Appendix Troubleshooting             |                                                               | <ul> <li>Are nozzles in good condition?</li> <li>Run a nozzle check.</li> <li>If nozzle clogs, perform a head cleaning.</li> <li>If Nozzle check and cleaning" P.58</li> </ul>                                                                                                       |
|                                      | Printed color is not accurate                                 | <ul> <li>If you are using high-capacity ink pack adapters, did you install ink bags and smart chip cards in the correct combination?</li> <li>Check if the combination is correct.</li> <li>If it is wrong, perform a "Longstore" cleaning and then initial ink charging.</li> </ul> |
|                                      |                                                               | Is the ink within expiration date? <ul> <li>Use a non-expired ink.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                      | Print doesn't dry easily                                      | <ul> <li>Do you use the heater?</li> <li>Check the heater settings.</li> <li>Specify the heater setting" P.102</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                      | Note                                                          | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

- High ink coverage printing may take longer to dry.
- Depending on the media being used, ink may not dry easily.

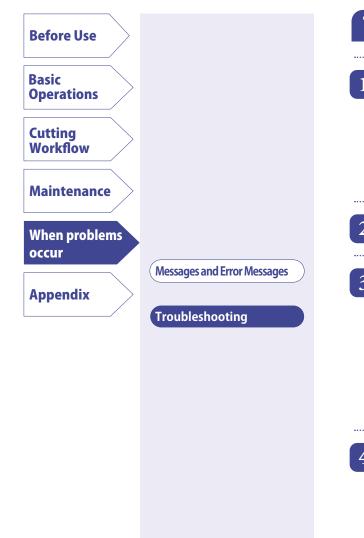
| Before Use                                          | Symptoms                                           | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations                                 | Nozzle clogging persists even after head cleaning. | <ul> <li>Is the cleaning wiper dirty?</li> <li>If yes, clean the cleaning wiper and the parts around the print head.</li> <li>Cleaning the cleaning wiper" P.188 ,"Cleaning the parts around the print head" P.185</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Cutting<br>Workflow<br>Maintenance<br>When problems |                                                    | <ul> <li>Did you select an appropriate cleaning mode?</li> <li>"Head cleaning" P.175</li> <li>Cleaning Mode: If nozzle clogging persists after attempting "Normal" or "Long" cleaning two or three times, perform "Little Charge".</li> <li>Select Nozzle: If "Little Charge" does not recover the nozzles, go to the Select Nozzle menu and select the nozzles that are firing properly.</li> <li>MUTOH Status Monitor OPERATION MANUAL</li> </ul> |
| occur<br>Appendix<br>Troubleshooting                |                                                    | <ul> <li>Is it time to replace the cleaning wiper or the pad for the flushing box?</li> <li>Check the conditions of cleaning wiper and flushing box pad and replace them if required.</li> <li>"Replacing the flushing box pad" P.200, "Replacing the cleaning wiper" P.213</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                              |

| Before Use                   |                                                                                        | Cutting-related trouble   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
|                              |                                                                                        | Symptoms                  | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| Basic<br>Operations          | rations<br>ing<br>kflow<br>ntenance<br>n problems<br>ir<br>Messages and Error Messages | Unable to perform cutting | Check that the cutter blade is attached to the blade holder.<br>"Install a blade on the blade holder" P.115                                                                                                                               |  |  |
| Cutting<br>Workflow          |                                                                                        |                           | <ul> <li>Does the edge of the blade come out from the blade holder?</li> <li>Adjust the blade depth.</li> <li>Come "Adjust blade depth" P.117</li> </ul>                                                                                  |  |  |
| Maintenance<br>When problems |                                                                                        |                           | <ul> <li>Is cutting force set properly?</li> <li>Cutting cannot be performed correctly if cut force is too low. Adjust the cut force.</li> <li>"Run a test cut" P.122</li> </ul>                                                          |  |  |
| occur<br>Appendix            |                                                                                        | Cutting is not consistent | <ul> <li>Did you perform cutting immediately after printing?</li> <li>Cutting may not be consistent if print is not completely dried or media is hot.<br/>Specify the following settings.</li> <li>Cooling down setting" P.104</li> </ul> |  |  |
|                              |                                                                                        |                           | <ul> <li>Did you install the blade holder to the machine properly?</li> <li>Check if the blade holder is secured properly in slot.</li> <li>Install the blade holder into the machine" P.119</li> </ul>                                   |  |  |
|                              |                                                                                        |                           | <ul> <li>Did you change to a different type of media?</li> <li>If yes, adjust the blade depth.</li> <li>Adjust blade depth" P.117</li> </ul>                                                                                              |  |  |
|                              |                                                                                        |                           | Is the blade depth set properly? <ul> <li>Adjust the blade depth.</li> <li><b>"Adjust blade depth" P.117</b></li> </ul>                                                                                                                   |  |  |
|                              |                                                                                        |                           | <ul> <li>Is cutting force set properly?</li> <li>Run a test cut and adjust the cut force.</li> <li>"Run a test cut" P.122</li> </ul>                                                                                                      |  |  |
|                              |                                                                                        |                           | <ul> <li>Is cutting speed set properly?</li> <li>Depending on the types of media, cutting with low speed can be more stable.<br/>Try a different cut speed setting.</li> <li>"Run a test cut" P.122</li> </ul>                            |  |  |

| Before Use                                            | Symptoms                                                         | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations                                   |                                                                  | Is the offset set properly? <ul> <li>Adjust the offset.</li> <li><b>"Run a test cut" P.122</b></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Cutting<br>Workflow<br>Maintenance                    | (Continuing from the previous page)<br>Cutting is not consistent | <ul> <li>Do you use a worn or damaged blade?</li> <li>If it is worn, increasing the cut force by approximately 50gf from the original setting may improve cutting stability. If you can visually see the damage on the blade edge, replace with a new blade.</li> <li>"Adjust blade depth" P.117, "Run a test cut" P.122, "Replacing the blade for contour cutter" P.211</li> </ul> |
| When problems<br>occur<br>Messages and Error Messages |                                                                  | <ul> <li>Is small pieces of media accumulated in the blade holder?</li> <li>Clean the blade holder. If large amount of small pieces of media is accumulated immediately after cleaning, replace with a new blade.</li> <li>Cleaning the blade holder" P.194, "Replacing the blade holder" P.212</li> </ul>                                                                          |
| Appendix<br>Troubleshooting                           |                                                                  | Is the surface of cutting mat worn or damaged? <ul> <li>Replace with a new cutting mat.</li> <li>"Replacing the cutting mat" P.209</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                       | Adjustment was done, but cuttings<br>gradually become unstable.  | <ul> <li>Do you use a worn or damaged blade?</li> <li>If it is worn, increasing the cut force by approximately 50gf from the original setting may improve cutting stability. If you can visually see the damage to the blade edge, replace with a new blade.</li> <li>"Adjust blade depth" P.117, "Run a test cut" P.122, "Replacing the blade for contour cutter" P.211</li> </ul> |
|                                                       | g                                                                | <ul> <li>Is small pieces of media accumulated in the blade holder?</li> <li>Clean the blade holder. If large amount of small pieces of media is accumulated immediately after cleaning, replace with a new blade.</li> <li>Cleaning the blade holder" P.194, "Replacing the blade holder" P.212</li> </ul>                                                                          |

| Before Use                                            | Symptoms                      | Possible causes and remedies                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic<br>Operations                                   | Cutting position is incorrect | <ul> <li>Check that the media is not skewed.</li> <li>To print and cut separately, the machine may not be able to read the crop marks if they are skewed more than 5 degrees. Load media properly.</li> <li>Step2. Cut" P.144</li> </ul>                               |
| Cutting<br>Workflow<br>Maintenance                    |                               | <ul> <li>Is there any dirt on crop marks?</li> <li>To print and cut separately, the machine may not be able to read the crop marks if they are dirty.</li> <li>Step2. Cut" P.144</li> </ul>                                                                            |
| When problems<br>occur<br>Messages and Error Messages |                               | <ul> <li>Do you use colored media?</li> <li>To print and cut separately, the machine may not be able to read the crop marks if the color of media is not white.</li> <li>Step2. Cut" P.144</li> </ul>                                                                  |
| Appendix<br>Troubleshooting                           |                               | <ul> <li>Is your media placed over the protruding part of the grit roller?</li> <li>Check the position of the pinch rollers and the protruding parts of the grit rollers.</li> <li>3. Loading the media into the machine" P.54</li> </ul>                              |
|                                                       |                               | <ul> <li>Is the contour cutting position adjusted properly?</li> <li>Adjust the contour cutting position.</li> <li>"Adjust the contour cutting position" P.130</li> </ul>                                                                                              |
|                                                       |                               | <ul> <li>Is there any dirt on the bottom surface of the color sensor?</li> <li>Clean the color sensor.</li> <li>Cleaning of color sensor" P.192</li> </ul>                                                                                                             |
|                                                       |                               | <ul> <li>Is the length of the output too long?</li> <li>If it is too long, the cutting position can be easily misaligned. For data that exceeds 1 m in length, selecting Segmental Cutting will improve cutting accuracy.</li> <li>Segmental Cutting" P.135</li> </ul> |
| Deep cut marks on the cutting mat                     | Reduce the blade depth.       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

 $\sim$ 

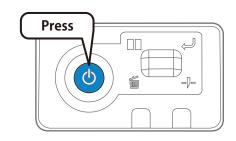


## The media is jammed



#### Press the power button on this machine.

- The blue lamp on the panel turns off.
- The machine begins powering off.

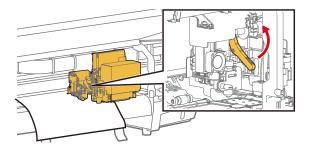




Open the front cover.

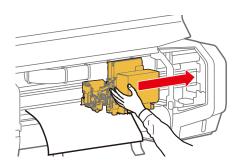


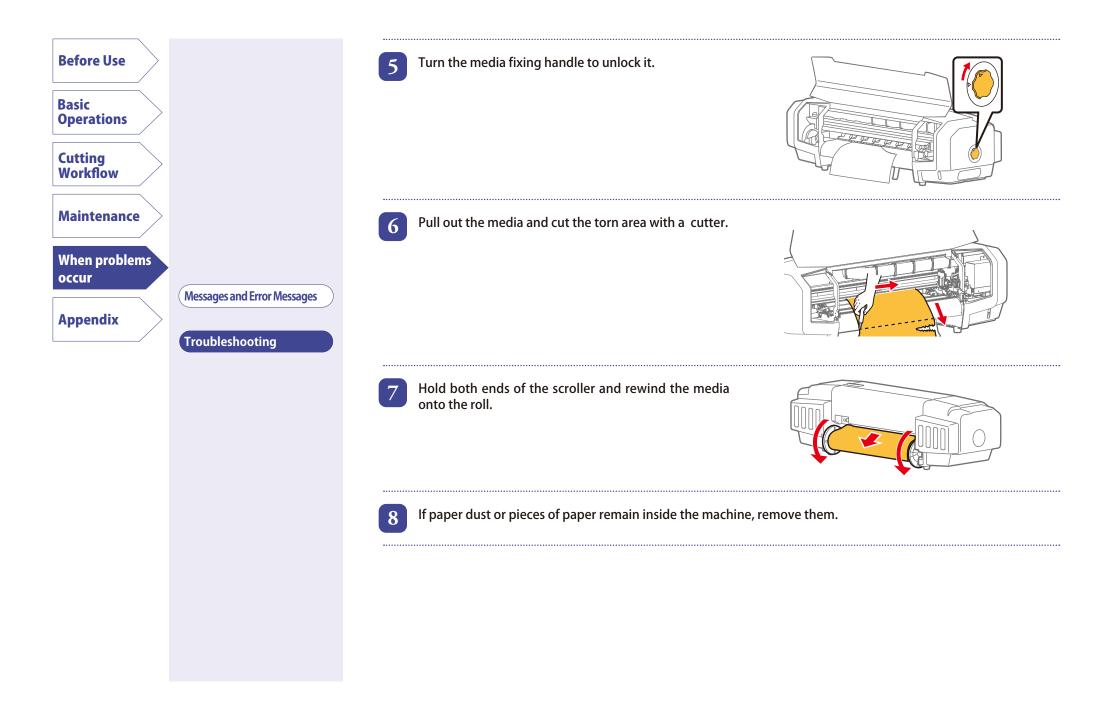
Raise the head height adjustment lever and change the print head height.

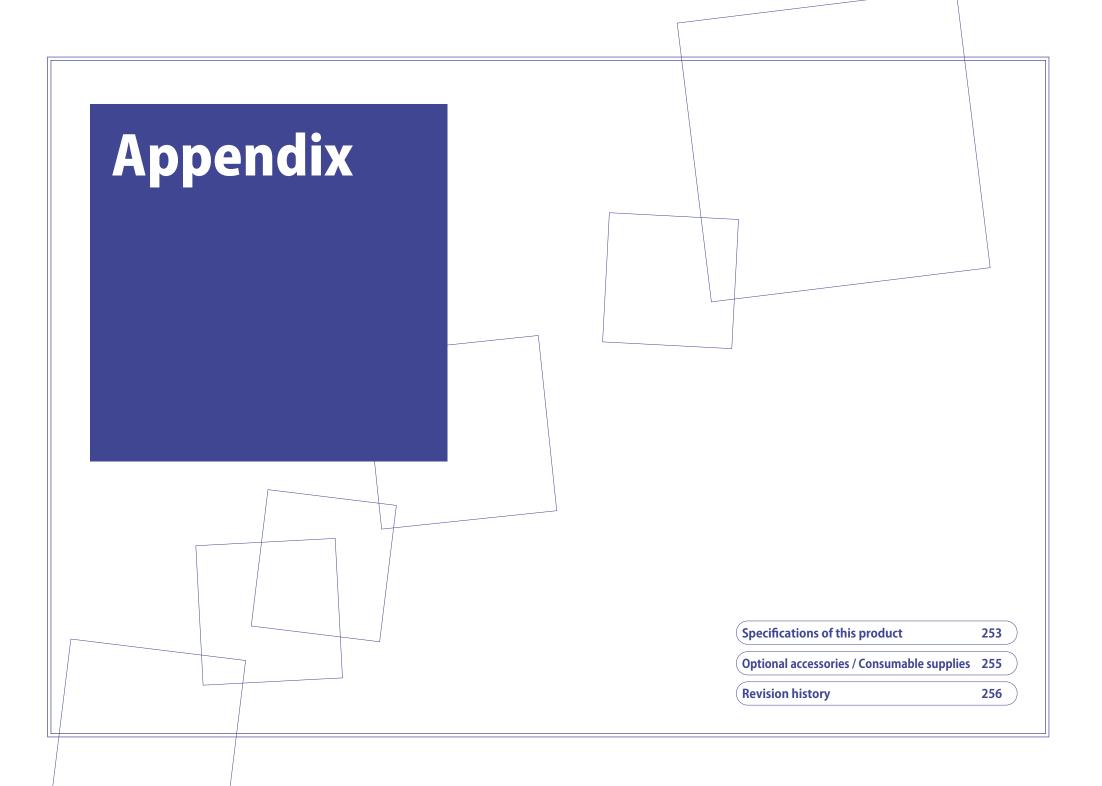


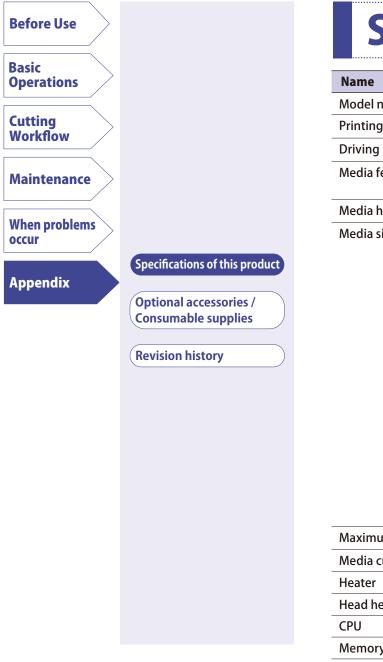


Move the carriage on the media to the right side.





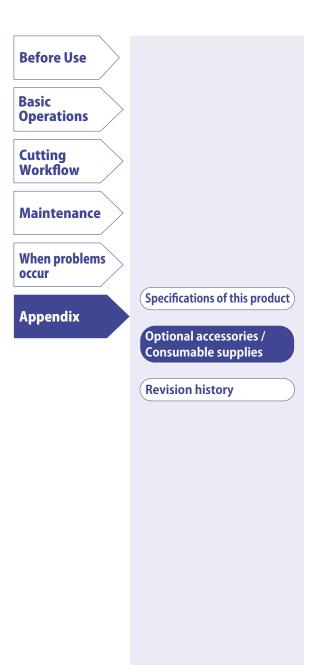




# Specifications of this product

| Name                    |                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Model name              |                                          | XPJ-C641SR-P                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  |
| Printing method         |                                          | On demand piezo method                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| Driving method          |                                          | Firmware servo/ DC motor drive                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| Media feed method       |                                          | Straight media feed, Roll media: load from the rear of the machine and eject from the front side. Face-out winding media only                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| Media hold-down system  |                                          | Pinch roller down system by media fixing handle                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |
| Media size              | Roll outer diameter                      | up to 150 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  |
|                         | Paper core diameter                      | 2 inches or 3 inches                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
|                         | Weight                                   | up to 9 kg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |
|                         | Width* <sup>1</sup><br>Maximum thickness | <ul> <li>198 to 228 mm</li> <li>283 to 313 mm</li> <li>344 to 374 mm</li> <li>394 to 424 mm</li> <li>444 to 474 mm</li> <li>494 to 524 mm</li> <li>602 to 630*<sup>2</sup>mm</li> <li>*<sup>1</sup> Common to both cut sheet and roll paper.</li> <li>*<sup>2</sup> Maximum width (For a roll media, width of paper care or media whichever is greater).</li> <li>Head height "Low": up to 0.4 mm<br/>(Maximum thickness that media can pass through the media path: 0.8 mm)</li> </ul> |  |
| Maximum printable width |                                          | 590 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| Media cutting method    |                                          | Auto cutting or manual cutting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| Heater                  |                                          | Built in the back side of media guide, Off / 30°C to 45°C                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |
| Head height adjustment  |                                          | Two options: Low and High                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |
| CPU                     |                                          | 64-bit RISC CPU                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |
| Memory                  |                                          | 256MB                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |
|                         |                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |

| Before Use          |                                                                                 | Name                            |                   | Description                                                                                       |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| serore use          |                                                                                 | Interface                       |                   | Ethernet (10BASE-T / 100BAST-TX)                                                                  |
| Basic               |                                                                                 | Ink                             | Color             | 4 colors (Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow)                                                           |
| Diperations         |                                                                                 | -                               | Туре              | 220 ml cartridge/ 1000 ml ink bag (Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow)                                  |
|                     |                                                                                 | Waste ink tank                  |                   | 1400 ml tank is attached to the printer. Empty the tank when needed.                              |
| Cutting<br>Norkflow |                                                                                 | <b>Environmental conditions</b> | Printer Operation | Temperature: 20 to 32°C                                                                           |
| worknow             |                                                                                 | _                               | Environment       | Humidity: 40 to 60% (no condensation)                                                             |
| Maintenance         |                                                                                 |                                 | Printing accuracy | Temperature: 22 to 30°C                                                                           |
| Maintenance         |                                                                                 |                                 | guaranteed range  | Humidity: 40 to 60% (no condensation)                                                             |
|                     |                                                                                 |                                 | Change rate       | Temperature: within 2°C per hour                                                                  |
| When problems       |                                                                                 | -                               |                   | Humidity: Less than 5% per hour (no condensation)                                                 |
|                     |                                                                                 |                                 | Storage condition | Without ink filled: within 6 months                                                               |
| Appendix            | Specifications of this product<br>Optional accessories /<br>Consumable supplies |                                 |                   | Temperature: -20°C to 60°C , Humidity: 20% to 80% No condensation                                 |
|                     |                                                                                 |                                 |                   | • With ink filled: within 1 week*                                                                 |
|                     |                                                                                 |                                 |                   | *32 ℃ or above, within 4 days<br>Temperature: –10℃ to 40℃ , Humidity: 20% to 80% (no condensation |
|                     |                                                                                 | Power supply                    | Voltage           | AC 100 V to 120 V $\pm$ 10% or 200 V to 240 V $\pm$ 10%.                                          |
| (                   | Revision history                                                                | specifications                  | Frequency         | $50 \text{ Hz} / 60 \text{ Hz} \pm 1 \text{ Hz}$                                                  |
|                     |                                                                                 |                                 |                   | 6.5 A or more                                                                                     |
|                     |                                                                                 |                                 |                   |                                                                                                   |
|                     |                                                                                 |                                 | Voltage switch    | Manually switch between 115 V/230 V by switch<br>(Factory default is set to 230 V)                |
|                     |                                                                                 | Power consumption               | Power off         |                                                                                                   |
|                     |                                                                                 | rower consumption               | Fower on          | 200 V AC to 240 V AC, 1.1 W or below                                                              |
|                     |                                                                                 |                                 | Operation         | 215 W (Peak 800 W or less)                                                                        |
|                     |                                                                                 | Current Consumption             | 100 V to 120 V    | 6.5 A or below                                                                                    |
|                     |                                                                                 | · -                             | 200 V to 240 V    | 3.5 A or below                                                                                    |
|                     |                                                                                 | Dimensions                      | Height            | 366 mm (With stand installed: 1,166 mm)                                                           |
|                     |                                                                                 | -                               | Width             | 1,190 mm                                                                                          |
|                     |                                                                                 | -                               | Depth             | 438 mm (With stand installed: 590 mm)                                                             |
|                     |                                                                                 | Mass                            | Main unit         | 34 kg                                                                                             |
|                     |                                                                                 | -                               | Stand             | 8.7 kg (VJ628-STD), 10.2kg (IJ-STDX-01)                                                           |



# **Optional accessories / Consumable supplies**

For information about optional accessories and consumable supplies, please contact your local MUTOH dealer.



## **Revision history**

| Date    | Version | Manual           | Supported Firmware |
|---------|---------|------------------|--------------------|
| 2024.10 | 00      | XPJC641SRPE-A-00 | V 1.00             |
| 2025.1  | 01      | XPJC641SRPE-A-01 | V 1.03             |
| 2025.2  | 02      | XPJC641SRPE-A-02 | V 1.04             |
| 2025.4  | 03      | XPJC641SRPE-A-03 | V 1.05 or later    |

Specifications of this product

Optional accessories / Consumable supplies

Revision history